DITA 1.1 Language Specification – OASIS Standard, 1 August 2007

[vertical list of authors]

© Copyright ,.

[cover art/text goes here]

Contents

Introduction 8
Topic elements 10
- **topic** 10
- **title** 12
- **titlealts** 13
- **navtitle** 14
- **searchtitle** 15
- **abstract** 16
- **shortdesc** 19
- **body** 20
- **section** 21
- **example** 23
- **related-links** 24

Concept elements 27
- **concept** 27
- **conbody** 28

Reference elements 30
- **reference** 30
- **refbody** 31
- **refsyn** 32
- **properties** 34
- **prophead** 35
- **proptypehd** 36
- **propvaluehd** 37
- **propdeschd** 38
- **property** 39
- **proptype** 39
- **propvalue** 40
- **propdesc** 41

Task elements 43
- **task** 43
- **taskbody** 44
- **prereq** 45
- **context** 46
- **steps** 47
- **steps-unordered** 48
- **step** 49
- **cmd** 52
- **info** 53
- **substeps** 54
- **substep** 55
- **stepxmp** 57
- **choicetable** 58
- **chhead** 60
- **choptionhd** 60
- **chdeschd** 62
- **chrow** 63
- **choption** 64
- **chdesc** 65
- **choices** 66
- **choice** 67
- **stepresult** 68
- **tutorialinfo** 69
- **result** 70
- **postreq** 71

Glossentry elements 73

glossentry 73
glossdef 74
glossterm 75
Body elements 77
p 77
note 78
ph 80
keyword 83
xref 86
ol 90
ul 92
li 94
sl 95
sli 97
dl 98
dlhead 100
dthd 101
ddhd 102
dlentry 103
dt 104
dd 105
fig 106
figgroup 108
desc 109
image 110
alt 113
object 114
param 118
pre 119
lines 121
cite 123
lq 125
q 127
Table elements 130
table 130
tgroup 133
colspec 135
thead 137
tbody 138
row 139
entry 141
simpletable 144
sthead 146
strow 147
stentry 148
Prolog elements 150
prolog 150
audience 151
author 153
brand 155
category 156
component 157
copyright 158
copyrholder 159
copyryear 160
created 161
critdates 162
featnum 163
keywords 164

metadata 165
othermeta 167
permissions 168
platform 169
prodinfo 170
prodname 171
prognum 172
publisher 173
resourceid 174
revised 175
series 177
source 178
vrmlist 179
vrm 180
Related links elements 182
link 182
linklist 184
linkpool 187
linktext 190
linkinfo 191
Miscellaneous elements 193
dita 193
draft-comment 193
fn 196
indexterm 199
indextermref 203
index-base 204
tm 205
data-about 208
data 212
foreign 217
unknown 221
Specialization elements 225
itemgroup 225
no-topic-nesting 226
required-cleanup 227
state 229
term 231
boolean 234
Typographic elements 238
b 238
i 240
u 242
tt 243
sup 245
sub 247
Programming elements 250
apiname 250
codeblock 252
codeph 254
option 256
parmname 259
parml 261
plentry 264
pt 264
pd 265
synph 266
syntaxdiagram 268
groupseq 270

groupchoice 272
groupcomp 275
fragment 278
fragref 279
synblk 282
synnote 283
synnoteref 284
kwd 285
var 287
oper 290
delim 292
sep 295
repsep 297
Software elements 301
msgph 301
msgblock 303
msgnum 304
cmdname 307
varname 310
filepath 312
userinput 314
systemoutput 316
User interface elements 319
uicontrol 319
wintitle 321
menucascade 323
shortcut 325
screen 326
Utilities elements 330
imagemap 330
area 332
coords 333
shape 335
Indexing group elements 337
index-see 337
index-see-also 338
index-sort-as 340
Map elements 342
map 342
anchor 344
navref 345
reltable 346
relrow 348
relcell 349
relheader 350
relcolspec 351
topicmeta 351
topicref 353
Map group elements 356
topicgroup 356
topichead 357
Bookmap content elements 359
bookmap 359
abbrevlist 360
amendments 362
appendix 363
backmatter 365
bibliolist 366
bookabstract 367

booklibrary 368
booklist 369
booklists 370
booktitle 371
booktitlealt 372
chapter 373
colophon 374
dedication 376
draftintro 377
figurelist 379
frontmatter 380
glossarylist 381
indexlist 382
mainbooktitle 384
notices 384
part 386
preface 388
tablelist 389
toc 390
trademarklist 392
Bookmap metadata elements 394
bookmeta 394
approved 395
bookchangehistory 397
bookevent 399
bookeventtype 401
bookid 403
booknumber 404
bookowner 406
bookpartno 408
bookrestriction 410
bookrights 412
completed 414
copyrfirst 414
copyrlast 416
day 418
edited 419
edition 421
isbn 422
maintainer 424
month 426
organization 427
person 429
printlocation 430
published 432
publisherinformation 434
publishtype 435
reviewed 437
revisionid 439
started 440
summary 440
tested 441
volume 443
year 445
xNAL domain elements 446
xNAL usage guidelines 446
authorinformation 448
addressdetails 450
administrativearea 451

contactnumber ... 451
contactnumbers ... 453
country ... 455
emailaddress ... 456
emailaddresses ... 458
firstname ... 460
generationidentifier ... 462
honorific ... 464
lastname ... 466
locality ... 468
localityname ... 469
middlename ... 470
namedetails ... 472
organizationinfo ... 474
organizationname ... 476
organizationnamedetails ... 477
otherinfo ... 477
personinfo ... 480
personname ... 482
postalcode ... 484
thoroughfare ... 484
url ... 485
urls ... 487
DITAVAL elements ... 490
val ... 490
style-conflict ... 490
prop ... 491
revprop ... 492
startflag ... 494
endflag ... 494
alt-text ... 495
Commonly referenced attributes ... 496
%display-atts; ... 496
%global-atts; ... 497
%id-atts; ... 498
%rel-atts; ... 498
%select-atts; ... 499
%localization-atts; ... 501
%univ-atts; ... 502
%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; ... 505
Other common DITA attributes ... 508
Complex attribute definitions ... 508
The conref attribute ... 508
The type attribute ... 510
The format attribute ... 512
The role attribute ... 512
Alphabetical listing of DITA elements ... 514

DITA 1.1 Language Specification – OASIS Standard, 1 August 2007

Introduction

The design of the Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) is based on deriving multiple information types, or topic types, from a common, generic topic. This language reference describes the elements that comprise the topic DTD and its initial, information-typed descendents: concept, reference, task, and glossentry. It also describes the DITA map DTD and its current specialization (bookmap), as well as various topic and map based DITA domains.

This specification describes specific details of each element in the OASIS DITA language. The separate DITA Architectural Specification includes detailed information about DITA specialization, when to use each topic type, how topics and maps interact, details of complex behaviors such as conref and conditional processing, and many other best practices for working with DITA.

The elements that make up the DITA design represent a set of different authoring concerns, each of which is grouped into its own chapter. Major sections include:

- The main components of a topic, concept, reference, task, document,
- The main components of a glossentry document (new for DITA 1.1),
- The common elements available for creating content within the body of a topic,
- The elements that make up the two types of tables in DITA,
- The elements contained in the prolog of a topic (many of these also appear in the topicmeta in a map),
- The elements contained in the related-links part of a topic,
- Elements that appear in many contexts, but do not fit into specific categories,
- Elements that are available for further specialization,
- Domain specializations of topic elements that represent different subject domains,
- Elements that make up a DITA map, followed by the "mapgroup" domain specialization,
- The bookmap specialization (new for DITA 1.1),
- The xNAL domain for describing author information (based on the extensible Name and Address Language standard, and also new for DITA 1.1),
- The DITAVAL DTD for flagging and filtering content (formalized for DITA 1.1),
- and commonly referenced descriptions

In addition to glossentry topics, bookmap, the xNAL domain, and the formalized DITAVAL format, DITA 1.1 also includes a new indexing domain, clarifications to the image and object elements, new props and base attributes for attribute specialization, and several new elements:

- abstract
- data and data-about
- foreign and unknown
- index-base

DITA 1.1 includes a new "dir" attribute to aid in localization. This attribute, along with other localization attributes, is now available on nearly every DITA element. In addition, common metadata and id attributes that were available on many elements in DITA 1.0 are now available on nearly every element.

Terminology

The key words “MUST”, “MUST NOT”, “REQUIRED”, “SHALL”, “SHALL NOT”, “SHOULD”, “SHOULD NOT”, “RECOMMENDED”, “MAY”, and “OPTIONAL” are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119].

Normative References

[RFC2119]

S. Bradner, Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels, http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt , IETF RFC 2119, March 1997.

Topic elements

Use the generic topic structure for untyped topics. While much of the DITA architecture is built upon generic topics, it is generally better to use more specific information types (such as concept, task, or reference) when they are available. For an answer to the question "What are topics?" and more details on when to use different information types, please refer to the DITA architectural specification.

topic

The <topic> element is the top-level DITA element for a single-subject topic or article. Other top-level DITA elements that are more content-specific are <concept>, <task>, <reference>, and <glossary>.

To support applications that are namespace-aware, DITA DTDs and Schemas provide the following namespaced declarations for topic, and for topic-level elements derived from topic:

```
ditaarch:DITAArchVersion="1.0"
xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/"
```

In DTDs, the “ditaarch” prefix is parameterized to enable future specialization.

Example

```
<topic id="topic">
 <title>Some little topic</title>
 <body>
  <p>Here's a <b><i>cute</i></b>,
  <b>little</b> topic.</p>
  <ul>
   <li>Some item</li>
   <li>Another item</li>
  </ul>
 </body>
</topic>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13)*(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 orabstract on page 16)*(optional)* then (prolog on page 150)*(optional)* then (body on page 20)*(optional)* then (related-links on page 24)*(optional)* then (topic on page 10 or concept on page 27 ortask on page 43 or reference on page 30 orglossentry on page 73)*(any number)*)
topic	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13)*(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 orabstract on page 16)*(optional)* then (prolog on page 150)*(optional)* then (body on page 20)*(optional)* then (related-links on page 24)*(optional)* then (topic on page 10) *(any number)*)
task	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13)*(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 orabstract on page 16)*(optional)* then (prolog on page 150)*(optional)* then (body on page 20)*(optional)* then (related-links on page 24)*(optional)* then (topic on page 10) *(any number)*)
reference	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13)*(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 orabstract on page 16)*(optional)* then (prolog on page 150)*(optional)* then (body on page 20)*(optional)* then (related-links on page 24)*(optional)* then (topic on page 10) *(any number)*)
concept	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13)*(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 orabstract on page 16)*(optional)* then (prolog on page 150)*(optional)* then (body on page 20)*(optional)* then (related-links on page 24)*(optional)* then (topic on page 10) *(any number)*)
glossary	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13)*(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 orabstract on

	page 16)*(optional)* then (prolog on page 150)*(optional)* then (body on page 20)*(optional)* then (related-links on page 24)*(optional)* then (topic on page 10) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	dita on page 193 topic on page 10 , concept on page 27 ,task on page 43 ,reference on page 30
topic	topic on page 10
task	topic on page 10
concept	topic on page 10
reference	topic on page 10
glossary	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27

Inheritance:

- topic/topic

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	This ID enables topics to be referenced uniquely by topicrefs in DITA maps.	ID		Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. See The conref attribute on page 508 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http://dita.oas	hitecture/2005/
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	"1.1" (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(topic ui-d) (topic hi-d) (topic pr-d) (topic sw-d) (topic ut-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

title

The <title> element contains a heading or label for the main parts of a topic, including the topic as a whole, its sections and examples, and its labelled content, such as figures and tables. Beginning with DITA 1.1, the element may also be used to provide a title for a map.

Example

```
<topic id="topic">
 <title>Some little topic</title>
 <body>
  <p>Some discourse.</p>
 </body>
</topic>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data on page 212 fig on page 106 figgroup on page 108 table on page 130 map on page 342 bookmap on page 359
map	data on page 212 fig on page 106 figgroup on page 108 table on page 130 map on page 342
ditabase	data on page 212 fig on page 106 figgroup on page 108 table on page 130 topic on page 10 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linklist on page 184 concept on page 27 , task on page 43 , reference on page 30 , refsyn on page 32 , syntaxdiagram on page 268 synblk on page 282 groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 groupcomp on page 275 fragment on page 278
topic	data on page 212 fig on page 106 figgroup on page 108 table on page 130 topic on page 10 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linklist on page 184 syntaxdiagram on page 268 synblk on page 282 , groupseq on page 270 groupchoice on page 272 groupcomp on page 275 fragment on page 278
task	data on page 212 fig on page 106 figgroup on page 108 table on page 130 topic on page 10 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linklist on page 184 task on page 43 , syntaxdiagram on page 268 , synblk on page 282 groupseq on page 270 groupchoice on page 272 groupcomp on page 275 fragment on page 278
concept	data on page 212 fig on page 106 figgroup on page 108 table on page 130 topic on page 10 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linklist on page 184 concept on page 27 , syntaxdiagram on page 268 ,

	synblk on page 282groupseq on page 270groupchoice on page 272groupcomp on page 275fragment on page 278
reference	data on page 212fig on page 106figgroup on page 108table on page 130topic on page 10 , section on page 21 ,example on page 23 ,linklist on page 184reference on page 30 ,refsyn on page 32 , syntaxdiagram on page 268synblk on page 282groupseq on page 270groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275fragment on page 278
glossary	data on page 212fig on page 106figgroup on page 108table on page 130topic on page 10 , section on page 21 ,example on page 23 ,linklist on page 184concept on page 27 ,syntaxdiagram on page 268 , synblk on page 282groupseq on page 270groupchoice on page 272groupcomp on page 275fragment on page 278

Inheritance:

- topic/title

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

titlealts

The alternate title element (<titlealts>) is optional, but can occur after the topic title. Two elements can be inserted as sub-elements of <titlealts>: navigation title <navtitle> and search title <searchtitle>.

When your DITA topic is transformed to XHTML, the <searchtitle> element is used to create a title element at the top of the resulting XHTML file. This title may differ from the first level heading that shows in the main browser window. In HTML output, the <navtitle> may be used to create navigation panels when your DITA topics are part of an HTML-based help or information system. The design intent is to enable navigation for HTML Help and Eclipse help systems.

When the <titlealts> element is absent, the title element is used for all purposes.

Example

```
<task id="progexample">
   <title>Example of Required Programming</title>
      <titlealts><navtitle>Programming Example</navtitle></titlealts>
   <taskbody> . . . </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((navtitle on page 14)*(optional)* then (searchtitle on page 15)*(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27 ,task on page 43 ,reference on page 30
topic	topic on page 10
task	topic on page 10 , task on page 43
concept	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27
reference	topic on page 10 , reference on page 30
glossary	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27

Inheritance:

- topic/titlealts

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

navtitle

The navigation title (<navtitle>) element is one of a set of alternate titles that can be included inside the <titlealts> element. This navigation title may differ from the first level

heading that shows in the main browser window. Use <navtitle> when the actual title of the topic isn't appropriate for use in navigation panes or online contents (for example, because the actual title is too long).

Example

```
<task id=progexample">
 <title>Publishing a DITA information set in PDF</title>
  <titlealts><navtitle>Publishing in PDF</navtitle></titlealts>
 <taskbody> . . . </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 oroption on page 256 orparmname on page 259 orapiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 ormsgnum on page 304 orvarname on page 310 orwintitle on page 321 orterm on page 231 ordata on page 212 ordata-about on page 208 orforeign on page 217 orunknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	titlealts on page 13

Inheritance:

- topic/navtitle

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

searchtitle

When your DITA topic is transformed to XHTML, the <searchtitle> element is used to create a title element at the top of the resulting HTML file. This title is normally used in search result summaries by some search engines, such as that in Eclipse (http://eclipse.org); if not set, the XHTML's title element defaults to the source topic's title

content (which may not be as well optimized for search summaries)

Example

```
<task id="progexample">
 <title>Programming Example</title>
  <titlealts><searchtitle>Example of Required
Programming</searchtitle></titlealts>
 <taskbody> . . . </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 oroption on page 256 orparmname on page 259 orapiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 ormsgnum on page 304 orvarname on page 310 orwintitle on page 321 orterm on page 231 ordata on page 212 ordata-about on page 208 oforeign on page 217 orunknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 orterm on page 231 ordata on page 212 ordata-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 orunknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	titlealts on page 13
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

"- topic/searchtitle " when used in topics, and "- map/searchtitle " when used in maps.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

abstract

The abstract element occurs between the topic title and the topic body, as the initial content of a topic. It can contain paragraph-level content as well as one or more

shortdesc elements which can be used for providing link previews or summaries. The <abstract> element cannot be overridden by maps, but its contained <shortdesc> elements can be, for the purpose of creating link summaries or previews.

Use the <abstract> element when the initial paragraph of a topic is unsuitable for use as a link preview or for summaries, for example because it contains lists or tables, or because only a portion of the paragraph is suitable. Note that when the initial paragraph is suitable as a summary, that content should be placed in a <shortdesc> element rather than in an <abstract> element. The <abstract> element allows for a wider range of content in your initial paragraph, such as lists and tables, and allows you to identify portions of the <abstract> content as useful for previews or summaries by embedding the <shortdesc> element within <abstract>.

When the contained <shortdesc> occurs within phrase-level content, it is treated as phrase-level content and should not create a separate paragraph on output of the topic. When the contained <shortdesc> occurs as a peer to paragraph-level content, it is treated as block-level content and should create a separate paragraph on output of the topic. When multiple <shortdesc> elements are included in an <abstract>, they are concatenated in output of link previews or summaries (separated by spaces).

Example: abstract with phrase-level short description

```
<abstract>The abstract is being used to provide more complex content.
        <shortdesc>The shortdesc must be directly contained by the
abstract.</shortdesc>
The abstract can put text around the shortdesc.
</abstract>
```

Topic output

The abstract is being used to provide more complex content. The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract. The abstract can put text around the shortdesc.

Preview/summary output

The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract.

Example: abstract with block-level short description

```
<abstract><p>The abstract is being used to provide more complex
content.</p>
        <shortdesc>The shortdesc must be directly contained by the
abstract.</shortdesc>
<p>The abstract can put text around the shortdesc.</p>
</abstract>
```

Topic output

The abstract is being used to provide more complex content.

The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract.

The abstract can put text around the shortdesc.

Preview/summary output

The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract.

Example: abstract with multiple short descriptions

```
<abstract>The abstract is being used to provide more complex content.
        <shortdesc>The shortdesc must be directly contained by the
abstract.</shortdesc>
        <p>The abstract can put text around the shortdesc.</p>
        <shortdesc>There can be more than one shortdesc.</shortdesc>
</abstract>
```

Topic output

The abstract is being used to provide more complex content. The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract.

The abstract can put text around the shortdesc.

There can be more than one shortdesc.

Preview/summary output

The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract. There can be more than one shortdesc.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 orcodeph on page 254 osynph on page 266 ofilepath on page 312 omsgph on page 301 ouserinput on page 314 osystemoutput on page 316 ob on page 238 ou on page 242 oiron page 240 ot on page 243 osup on page 245 osub on page 247 ouicontrol on page 319 omenucascade on page 323 oterm on page 231 oxref on page 86 orcite on page 123 oq on page 127 obroolean on page 234 ostate on page 229 okeyword on page 83 oroption on page 256 oparmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 ocmdname on page 307 omsgnum on page 304 ovarname on page 310 owintitle on page 321 otm on page 205 op on page 77 orlq on page 125 onote on page 78 ordl on page 98 or parml on page 261 oul on page 92 orol on page 90 osl on page 95 orpre on page 119 ocodeblock on page 252 omsgblock on page 303 oscreen on page 326 olines on page 121 ofig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 oimagemap on page 330 oimage on page 110 oobject on page 114 otable on page 130 osimpletable on page 144 odraft-comment on page 193 orequired-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 oindextermref on page 203 oindexterm on page 199 odata on page 212 odata-about on page 208 oforeign on page 217 ounknown on page 221 oshortdesc on page 19)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27 ,task on page 43 ,reference on page 30
topic	topic on page 10
task	topic on page 10 , task on page 43
concept	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27
reference	topic on page 10 , reference on page 30
glossary	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27

Inheritance:

- topic/abstract

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

shortdesc

The short description (<shortdesc>) element occurs between the topic title and the topic body, as the initial paragraph-like content of a topic, or it can be embedded in an abstract element. The short description, which represents the purpose or theme of the topic, is also intended to be used as a link preview and for searching. When used within a DITA map, the short description of the <topicref> can be used to override the short description in the topic.

Use the <shortdesc> element when the first paragraph of topic content is simple enough to be suitable for use as a link preview or for summaries. Otherwise use the <abstract> element instead to provide richer content around the <shortdesc>. See the abstract on page 16 description for more details on the behavior of shortdesc in an abstract.

While inclusion of the <shortdesc> element is not mandated by DITA or the tools, it is recommended that topics contain this element. In cases where a topic contains only one paragraph, then it is preferable to include this text in the <shortdesc> and leave the topic body empty.

The short description should be a single, concise paragraph containing one or two sentences of no more than 50 words.

Type	Recommended content
Task	The short description should explain what the task information helps users accomplish, the benefits of the task, or the purpose of the task. Do not simply repeat the title. Try to include information that will help users understand when the task is appropriate or why the task is necessary. Avoid stating the obvious, such as “You can use XYZ to do A” as the only statement in the short description for Task A. In some cases, add more information about why the task is beneficial. Do not use sentence fragments. Use complete sentences. Avoid starting short descriptions with phrases such as “This topic describes . . . .” or “This topic is about . . . .”
Concept	Introduce the concept and provide a concise answer to the question "What is this?" and in some cases "Why do I care about this?" If the concept is unfamiliar, you can start with a brief definition. Avoid using the short description to lead in or build up to a topic. The short description paragraph should contain the main point of the conceptual topic. The concept short description should clearly apply to a concept. Avoid turning the concept topic into a task. Do not simply repeat the title. Do not use sentence fragments. Use complete sentences. Avoid starting short descriptions with phrases such as “This topic describes . . . .” or “This topic is about . . . .”
Reference	Briefly describe what the reference item does, what it is, or what it is used for. In most cases, use a complete sentence. You can use a sentence fragment only for a topic that is very short, such as an API topic and each of its subtopics. Use consistent phrasing across libraries and information centers so that your information can be seamlessly integrated with another product's information.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351, bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351
ditabase	topic on page 10 , abstract on page 16 , concept on page 27 , task on page 43 , reference on page 30 , glossdef on page 74
topic	topic on page 10 , abstract on page 16
task	topic on page 10 , abstract on page 16 , task on page 43
concept	topic on page 10 , abstract on page 16 , concept on page 27
reference	topic on page 10 , abstract on page 16 , reference on page 30
glossary	topic on page 10 , abstract on page 16 , concept on page 27 , glossdef on page 74

Inheritance:

"- topic/shortdesc " when used in topics, and "- map/shortdesc " when used in maps.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

body

The <body> element is the container for the main content of a <topic>.

Example

```
<topic>
<title>...</title>
<prolog>...</prolog>
<body> ... ... </body>
</topic>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or required-cleanup on page 227 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or section on page 21 or example on page 23)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	topic on page 10

Inheritance:

- topic/body

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

section

The <section> element represents an organizational division in a topic. Sections are used to organize subsets of information that are directly related to the topic. For example, the titles **Reference Syntax**, **Example** and **Properties** might represent section-level discourse within a topic about a command-line process—the content in each section relates uniquely to the subject of that topic. Multiple sections within a single topic do not represent a hierarchy, but rather peer divisions of that topic. Sections cannot be nested. A section may have an optional title.

Example

```
<reference id="reference">
 <title>Copy Command</title>
 <refbody>
  <section>
   <title>Purpose</title>
   This little command copies
   things.
  </section>
 </refbody>
</reference>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or title on page 12 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	body on page 20 , conbody on page 28 ,refbody on page 31
topic	body on page 20
task	body on page 20
concept	body on page 20 , conbody on page 28
reference	body on page 20 , refbody on page 31
glossary	body on page 20 , conbody on page 28

Inheritance:

- topic/section

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

example

The <example> element is a section with the specific role of containing examples that illustrate or support the current topic. The <example> element has the same content model as <section>.

DITA uses <example> to contain both discussion and sample code or outputs. Hence, in a DITA topic, to represent programming code and results within the discussion in an example, use the <codeblock> and <systemoutput> elements within the example element. For lines of text, use the <lines> element. For pre-formatted text such as email headers, use the <pre> element.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or dm on page 205 or pt on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or title on page 12 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	body on page 20 , conbody on page 28 ,taskbody on page 44 ,refbody on page 31
topic	body on page 20
task	body on page 20 , taskbody on page 44
concept	body on page 20 , conbody on page 28
reference	body on page 20 , refbody on page 31
glossary	body on page 20 , conbody on page 28

Inheritance:

- topic/example

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

related-links

The related information links of a topic (<related-links> element) are stored in a special section following the body of the topic. After a topic is processed into it final output form, the related links are usually displayed at the end of the topic, although some Web-based help systems might display them in a separate navigation frame.

Processing notes:

1. Prerequisite links are an exception (that is, in which *importance="required"* and the role is compatible–not ancestor/parent/child/descendant/next). Implementations may (but need not) sort these after the <shortdesc> (all topics) or after the <prereq> section (for tasks).
2. PDF output typically ignores hierarchical links, for example ancestor/parent/child/descendant/next/previous/sibling, although it may include some child links to produce summaries at the start of chapters.
3. Links not in a <linklist> will be sorted on output based on type, role, and importance.
4. The value of the *format* attribute defaults to “dita” unless the attribute *scope="external",* when format is assumed to be not-dita.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(link on page 182 d*l*nklist on page 184 d*l*nkpool on page 187)*(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

ditabase	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27 ,task on page 43 ,reference on page 30 ,glossentry on page 73
topic	topic on page 10
task	topic on page 10 , task on page 43
concept	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27
reference	topic on page 10 , reference on page 30
glossary	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27 ,glossentry on page 73

Inheritance:

- topic/related-links

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
role	The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time. See The role attribute on page 512 for information on supported values.	(parent | child | sibling | friend | next | previous | cousin | ancestor | descendant | *sample* | *external* | *[deprecated]* other | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
otherrole	Indicates an alternate role. This value is used when the role attribute is set to other.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Concept elements

DITA concept topics answer "What is..." questions. Use the concept topic to introduce the background or overview information for tasks or reference topics. The concept topic has the restriction that following a section or example, only other sections or examples are permitted as content. For more details on when to use concept and other information types, please refer to the DITA architectural specification.

concept

The <concept> element is the top-level element for a topic that answers the question “what is?” Concepts provide background information that users must know before they can successfully work with a product or interface. Often, a concept is an extended definition of a major abstraction such as a process or function. It might also have an example or a graphic, but generally the structure of a concept is fairly simple.

Example

```
<concept id="concept">
 <title>Introduction to Bird Calling</title>
 <shortdesc>If you wish to attract more birds to your Acme Bird Feeder,
learn the art of bird calling. Bird calling is an efficient way
to alert more birds to the presence of your bird feeder.</shortdesc>
 <conbody>
   <p>Bird calling requires learning:</p>
   <ul>
    <li>Popular and classical bird songs</li>
    <li>How to whistle like a bird</li>
   </ul>
 </conbody>
</concept>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13) *(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 or abstract on page 16) *(optional)* then (prolog on page 150 *(optional)* then (conbody on page 28) *(optional)* then (related-links on page 24) *(optional)* then (topic on page 10 or concept on page 27 or task on page 43 or reference on page 30 or glossentry on page 73) *(any number)*)
concept	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13) *(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 or abstract on page 16) *(optional)* then (prolog on page 150 *(optional)* then (conbody on page 28) *(optional)* then (related-links on page 24) *(optional)* then (concept on page 27) *(any number)*)
glossary	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13) *(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 or abstract on page 16) *(optional)* then (prolog on page 150 *(optional)* then (conbody on page 28) *(optional)* then (related-links on page 24) *(optional)* then (topic on page 10) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	dita on page 193 topic on page 10 , concept on page 27 , task on page 43 , reference on page 30
concept	concept on page 27

Inheritance:

- topic/topic concept/concept

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	This ID enables topics to be referenced uniquely by topicrefs in DITA maps.	ID		Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. See The conref attribute on page 508 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http://dita.oas	hitecture/2005/
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	"1.1" (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(topic ui-d) (topic hi-d) (topic pr-d) (topic sw-d) (topic ut-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

conbody

The <conbody> element is the main body-level element for a concept. Like the <body> element of a general <topic>, <conbody> allows paragraphs, lists, and other elements as well as sections and examples. But <conbody> has a constraint that a section or an example can be followed only by other sections or examples.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, concept, glossary	((p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or required-cleanup on page 227 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or

	unknown on page 221*(any number)* then (section on page 21 or example on page 23) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, concept, glossary	concept on page 27

Inheritance:

- topic/body concept/conbody

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Reference elements

Use the reference elements to describe regular features of sets of things, most commonly the commands in a programming language. However, this format is also suitable for recipes, bibliographies, catalogues, and similar collections of structured descriptive prose. For more details on when to use reference and other information types, please refer to the DITA architectural specification.

reference

The <reference> element defines a top-level container for a reference topic. Reference topics document programming constructs or facts about a product. Examples of reference topics include language elements, class descriptions, commands, functions, statements, protocols, types, declarators, operands, and API information, which provide quick access to facts, but no explanation of concepts or procedures. Reference topics have the same high-level structure as any other topic type, with a title, short description, and body. Within the body, reference topics are typically organized into one or more sections, property lists, and tables. The reference topic type provides general rules that apply to all kinds of reference information, using elements like <refsyn> for syntax or signatures, and <properties> for lists of properties and values.

Example

```
<reference id="refexample">
 <title>A reference topic/title>
 <refbody>
  <refsyn>Describe command or api syntax here, possibly
  using &lt;synph> or &lt;syntax> markup for explicit
  definition of syntax or prototype construction.
  </refsyn>
  <section>
   <title>Some section title</title>
  </section>
  <properties>
   <property>
    <proptype>type</proptype>
    <propvalue>value</propvalue>
    <propdesc>description</propdesc>
   </property>
  </properties>
 </refbody>
</reference>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13) *(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 or abstract on page 16) *(optional)* then (prolog on page 150 *(optional)* then (refbody on page 31) *(optional)* then (related-links on page 24) *(optional)* then (topic on page 10 or concept on page 27 or task on page 43 or reference on page 30 or glossentry on page 73) *(any number)*)
reference	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13) *(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 or abstract on page 16) *(optional)* then (prolog on page 150 *(optional)* then (refbody on page 31) *(optional)* then (related-links on page 24) *(optional)* then (reference on page 30) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	dita on page 193 topic on page 10 , concept on page 27 , task on page 43 , reference on page 30

reference	reference on page 30

Inheritance:

- topic/topic reference/reference

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	This ID enables topics to be referenced uniquely by topicrefs in DITA maps.	ID		Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. See The conref attribute on page 508 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http://dita.oas	hitecture/2005/
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	"1.1" (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(topic ui-d) (topic hi-d) (topic pr-d) (topic sw-d) (topic ut-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

refbody

The <refbody> element is a container for the main content of the reference topic. Reference topics limit the body structure to tables (both simple and standard), property lists, syntax sections, and generic sections and examples, in any sequence or number.

Reference topics represent the kind of information that users typically consult to understand programming objects, statements, commands, configuration file options, recipes, terminological descriptions, and so forth.

Example
See reference on page 30 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	((section on page 21 or refsyn on page 32 or example on page 23 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or properties on page 34 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	reference on page 30

Inheritance:

- topic/body reference/refbody

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

refsyn

The <refsyn> element is a special section inside a reference topic. The section often contains syntax or signature content (for example, a command-line utility's calling syntax,

or an API's signature). The <refsyn> contains a brief, possibly diagrammatic description of the subject's interface or high-level structure.

Example

See reference on page 30 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or fn on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or title on page 12 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	refbody on page 31

Inheritance:

- topic/section reference/refsyn

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

properties

The <properties> element gives a list of properties for the subject of the current topic, for example whether a class is public or protected. Each property can include the type, value, and a description. The typical rendering is usually in a table-like format. To represent multiple values for a type, just create additional property elements and use only the <propvalue> element (and <propdesc> when needed) for each successive value.

```
<properties>
  <prophead>
                <proptypehd>Visual Element</proptypehd>
                <propvaluehd>Value</propvaluehd>
                <propdeschd>Implication</propdeschd>
  <property>
    <proptype>color</proptype>
    <propvalue>red</propvalue>
    <propdesc>depicts anger</propdesc>
  </property>
  <property>
    <propvalue>green</propvalue>
    <propdesc>depicts permission</propdesc>
  </property>
</properties>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	((prophead on page 35)*(optional)* then (property on page 39)*(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	refbody on page 31

Inheritance:

- topic/simpletable reference/properties

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

relcolwidth	A relative value to specify the width of a column in relationship to the width of the other columns. The values are totaled and made a percent. For example:
	`relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*"`
	causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%.
	`relcolwidth="90* 150*"`
	causes width of 37.5% and 62.5%.
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

keycol	Defines the column that will be used for row headings. No value indicates no key column. When present, the numerical value causes the specified column to be highlighted as a vertical header.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
refcols	Designates columns that contain references, and are candidates for automated linking. Columns are identified by a space-delimited list of numbers (for example: `1  3`).	NMTOKENS	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at %display-atts; on page 496	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

prophead

The prophead element supports regular headings for the properties element.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	((proptypehd on page 36)*(optional)* then (propvaluehd on page 37)*(optional)* then (propdeschd on page 38)*(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	properties on page 34

Inheritance:

- topic/sthead reference/prophead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

proptypehd

The proptypehd element supports regular headings for the type column of a properties table.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or dl on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	prophead on page 35

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/proptypehd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at	parameter	*PE not*	Not

%id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	%univ-atts; on page 502	entity	*applicable*	applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

propvaluehd

The propvaluehd element supports regular headings for the value column of a properties table.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	prophead on page 35

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/propvaluehd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%localization-atts;)				
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

propdeschd

The propdeschd element supports regular headings for the description column of a properties table.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or fn on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	prophead on page 35

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/propdeschd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

property

The <property> element represents a property of the current topic's subject. For example, if the current topic is a class, the property might show that the class is protected rather than public. It contains three optional elements: type, value, and description.

Example
See properties on page 34 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	((proptype on page 39)*(optional)* then (propvalue on page 40)*(optional)* then (propdesc on page 41) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	properties on page 34

Inheritance:

- topic/strow reference/property

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

proptype

The proptype element describes the type of property.

Example
See properties on page 34 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	property on page 39

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/proptype

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

propvalue

The <propvalue> element indicates the value or values for the current property type. You can put values in separate rows if they need separate descriptions, and just leave the <proptype> element blank.

Example
See properties on page 34 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or i on page 242 or tron page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or image on page 110 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	property on page 39

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/propvalue

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

propdesc

The <propdesc> element is used to provide a short description of the property type and its listed values (or just the value).

Example
See properties on page 34 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model

ditabase, reference	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)* (any number)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	property on page 39

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/propdesc

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Task elements

Task topics answer "How do I?" questions, and have a well-defined structure that describes how to complete a procedure to accomplish a specific goal. Use the task topic to describe the steps of a particular task, or to provide an overview of a higher-level task. The task topic includes sections for describing the context, prerequisites, actual steps, expected results, example, and expected next steps for a task. For more details on when to use task and other information types, please refer to the DITA architectural specification.

task

The <task> element is the top-level element for a task topic. Tasks are the main building blocks for task-oriented user assistance. They generally provide step-by-step instructions that will enable a user to perform a task. A task answers the question of "how to?" by telling the user precisely what to do and the order in which to do it. Tasks have the same high-level structure as other topics, with a title, short description and body.

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
 <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
 <taskbody>
  <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
  </context>
  <steps>
   <step><cmd>Open...</cmd></step>
  </steps>
 </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13) *(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 or abstract on page 16) *(optional)* then (prolog on page 150 *(optional)* then (taskbody on page 44) *(optional)* then (related-links on page 24) *(optional)* then (topic on page 10 or concept on page 27 or task on page 43 or reference on page 30 or glossentry on page 73) *(any number)*)
task	((title on page 12) then (titlealts on page 13) *(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19 or abstract on page 16) *(optional)* then (prolog on page 150 *(optional)* then (taskbody on page 44) *(optional)* then (related-links on page 24) *(optional)* then (task on page 43) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	dita on page 193topic on page 10 , concept on page 27 , task on page 43 , reference on page 30
task	task on page 43

Inheritance:

- topic/topic task/task

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	This ID enables topics to be referenced uniquely by topicrefs in DITA maps.	ID		Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. See The conref attribute on page 508 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http://dita.oas	hitecture/2005/
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	“1.1” (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(topic ui-d) (topic hi-d) (topic pr-d) (topic sw-d) (topic ut-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

taskbody

The <taskbody> element is the main body-level element inside a task topic. A task body has a very specific structure, with the following elements in this order: <prereq>, <context>, <steps>, <result>, <example> and <postreq>. Each of the body sections are optional.

Example
See task on page 43 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((prereq on page 45)*(optional)* then (context on page 46)*(optional)* then (steps on page 47 or steps-unordered on page 48)*(optional)* then (result on page 70)*(optional)* then (example on page 23) *(optional)* then (postreq on page 71)*(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	task on page 43

Inheritance:

- topic/body task/taskbody

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

prereq

The pre-requisite (<prereq>) section of a task should document things the user needs to know or do before starting the current task. Prerequisite links will be placed in a list after the related-links section; on output the <prereq> links from the related-links section are added to the <prereq> section.

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
 <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
 <taskbody>
  <prereq>Before creating a new SQLJ file, you must
  log in to the SQLJ server.</prereq>
 </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)* *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody on page 44

Inheritance:

- topic/section task/prereq

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

context

The <context> section of a task provides background information for the task. This information helps the user understand what the purpose of the task is and what they will gain by completing the task. This section should be brief and does not replace or recreate a concept topic on the same subject, although the context section may include some conceptual information.

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
<title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
<taskbody>
<context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
```

```
</context>
</taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody on page 44

Inheritance:

- topic/section task/context

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

steps

The <steps> section of a task provides the main content of the task topic. The task is described as a series of steps that the user must follow to accomplish the task. One or more <steps> elements is required inside the <steps> section.

Two or more steps appear as an ordered list. A single step appears as a paragraph. If all of the contained steps are simple (that is, have no more than a <cmd> element each)

then the step list should default to compact. Otherwise it should be formatted as uncompact (with blank lines between each step on output).

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
<title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
 <taskbody>
 <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ
file.</context>
  <steps>
   <step>
    <cmd>In a text editor, create a new file.</cmd>
   </step>
   <step>
    <cmd>Enter the first query statement.</cmd>
   </step>
  </steps>
 </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((step on page 49)*(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody on page 44

Inheritance:

- topic/ol task/steps

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

steps-unordered

Like the <steps> element, the <steps-unordered> section of a task provides the main content of the task topic, but particularly for cases in which the order of steps may vary from one situation to another. One or more steps is required inside the <steps-unordered> section.

Two or more steps appear as an unordered list. A single step appears as a paragraph. If all of the contained steps are simple (that is, have no more than a <cmd> element each) then the list should default to compact. Otherwise it should be formatted as uncompact (with blank lines between each step on output).

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
 <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
 <taskbody>
  <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ
file.</context>
  <steps-unordered>
   <step><cmd>In a text editor, create a new file.</cmd></step>
  </steps-unordered>
 </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((step on page 49)*(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody on page 44

Inheritance:

- topic/ul task/steps-unordered

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

step

The <step> element represents an action that a user must follow to accomplish a task. Each step in a task must contain a command <cmd> element which describes the particular action the user must do to accomplish the overall task. The step element can also contain information <info>, substeps <substeps>, tutorial information <tutorialinfo>, a step example <stepxmp>, choices <choices> or a stepresult <stepresult>, although these

are optional.

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
<title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
<taskbody>
<context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
</context>
<steps>
<step>
 <cmd>Select
<menucascade><uicontrol>File</uicontrol><uicontrol>New</uicontrol></menucascade>.</cmd>
 <info>New files are created with default values based on a standard
template.</info>
</step>
</steps>
</taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(cmd on page 52 then (info on page 53 orsubsteps on page 54 ortutorialinfo on page 69 orstepxmp on page 57 orchoicetable on page 58 orchoices on page 66)*(any number)* then (stepresult on page 68) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	steps on page 47 , steps-unordered on page 48

Inheritance:

- topic/li task/step

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	Describes whether the current step or substep is optional or required. Output processors may (but need not) highlight steps that are optional or required.	optional | required | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.			
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

cmd

The command (<cmd>) element is required as the first element inside a <step>. It provides the active voice instruction to the user for completing the step, and should not be more than one sentence. If the step needs additional explanation, this can follow the <cmd> element inside an <info > element.

Example

```
<step><cmd>In a text editor, create a new file.</cmd></step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or image on page 110 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step on page 49 , substep on page 55

Inheritance:

- topic/ph task/cmd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

info

The information element (<info>) occurs inside a <step> element to provide additional information about the step.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Type a name for the widget.</cmd>
<info>The widget name is created when you configure the widget
in the Widget Configuration Dialog. It is not an actual class
name or file name, just a label for the widget as used in this
application.</info>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step on page 49 , substep on page 55

Inheritance:

- topic/itemgroup task/info

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

substeps

The <substeps> element allows you to break a step down into a series of separate actions, and should be used only if necessary. Try to describe the steps of a task in a single level of steps. If you need to use more than one level of substep nesting, you should probably rewrite the task to simplify it.

Example

```
<substeps>
<substep><cmd>Hold pencil in a steady, level position.</cmd></substep>
<substep><cmd>Turn handle until resistance diminishes.</cmd>
<info>Note: initially, it may be somewhat difficult to turn the handle if
pencil has never been sharpened before.</info></substep>
<substep><cmd>To determine if pencil is sharp, remove it from the
sharpener
and inspect the tip.</cmd></substep>
</substeps>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(substep on page 55)*(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step on page 49

Inheritance:

- topic/ol task/substeps

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

substep

A <substep> element has the same structure as a <step>, except that it does not allow lists of choices or substeps within it, in order to prevent unlimited nesting of steps.

Example
See substeps on page 54 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(cmd on page 52 then (info on page 53 or tutorialinfo on page 69 orstepxmp on page 57)*(any number)* then (stepresult on page 68)*(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	substeps on page 54

Inheritance:

- topic/li task/substep

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	Describes whether the current step or substep is optional or required. Output processors may (but need not) highlight steps that are optional or required.	optional | required | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.			
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.			
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

stepxmp

The step example (<stepxmp>) element is used to illustrate a step of a task. The example can be a couple of words, or an entire paragraph.

Example

```
<step>
 <cmd>Type a name for the widget.</cmd>
 <stepxmp>For example, <userinput>mywidget</userinput></stepxmp>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step on page 49 , substep on page 55

Inheritance:

- topic/itemgroup task/stepxmp

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

choicetable

The <choicetable> element contains a series of optional choices available within a step of a task.

By default, the highlighting of the choice column is bold. To change the highlighting, set the keycol attribute of the ChoiceTable tag to 0 (zero).

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
<substeps>
<substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing
this</cmd></substep>
<substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
</substeps>
<choicetable>
<chhead>
<choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
<chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
</chhead>
<chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
<chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
<chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
<chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
</choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((chhead on page 60)*(optional)* then (chrow on page 63)*(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step on page 49

Inheritance:

- topic/simpletable task/choicetable

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

relcolwidth	A relative value to specify the width of a column in relationship to the width of the other columns. The values are totaled and made a percent. For example:
	`relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*"`
	causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%.
	`relcolwidth="90* 150*"`
	causes width of 37.5% and 62.5%.
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

keycol	Defines the column that will be used for row headings. By default, the first column is used. To indicate that no column in the table is the key column, set the attribute to 0.	NMTOKEN	1	No
refcols	Designates columns that contain references, and are candidates for automated linking. Columns are identified by a space-delimited list of numbers (for example: `1 3`).	NMTOKENS	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at %display-atts; on page 496	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

chhead

The <chhead> element is a container inside the <choicetable> element that provides specific heading text to override the default **Options** and **Description** headings. The <chhead> element contains both a <choptionhd> and <chdeschd> element as a pair.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <substeps>
  <substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing
this</cmd></substep>
  <substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
 </substeps>
 <choicetable>
  <chhead>
   <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
   <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
     <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
     <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((choptionhd on page 60) then (chdeschd on page 62))

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	choicetable on page 58

Inheritance:

- topic/sthead task/chhead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

choptionhd

The <choptionhd> element provides a specific label for the list of options that a user chooses from to accomplish a step. The default label for options is **Option**.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <choicetable>
  <chhead>
   <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
   <chdeschd>And this happens</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
     <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
     <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or fn on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	chhead on page 60

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry task/choptionhd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at	parameter	*PE not*	Not

%id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	%univ-atts; on page 502	entity	*applicable*	applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

chdeschd

The <chdeschd> option provides a specific label for the list of descriptions of options that a user must choose to accomplish a step of a task. The default label overridden by <chdeschd> is **Description**.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <choicetable>
  <chhead>
   <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
   <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
     <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
     <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	chhead on page 60

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry task/chdeschd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

chrow

The <chrow> element is a container inside the <choicetable> element. The <chrow> element contains both a <choption> and <chdesc> element as a pair.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <substeps>
  <substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing
this</cmd></substep>
  <substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
 </substeps>
 <choicetable>
  <chhead>
   <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
   <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
  <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
  <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((choption on page 64) then (chdesc on page 65))

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	choicetable on page 58

Inheritance:

- topic/strow task/chrow

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

choption

The <choption> element describes an option that a user could choose to accomplish a step of a task. In a user interface, for example, this might be the name of radio button.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <choicetable>
  <chhead>
   <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
   <chdeschd>And this happens</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
     <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
     <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	chrow on page 63

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry task/choption

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

chdesc

The <chdesc> element is a description of an option that a user chooses while performing a step to accomplish a task. It explains why the user would choose that option, and might explain the result of the choice when it is not immediately obvious.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <substeps>
  <substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing
this</cmd></substep>
  <substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
 </substeps>
 <choicetable>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
     <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
     <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203

	or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	chrow on page 63

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry task/chdesc

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

choices

The <choices> element contains a list of <choice> elements. It is used when the user will need to choose one of several actions while performing the steps of a task.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Choose a server.</cmd>
<choices>
<choice>If you have a remote server you want to test on, type the
IP address or hostname of the server here.</choice>
<choice>If you want to do local testing, just type localhost.</choice>
</choices>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((choice on page 67)*(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step on page 49

Inheritance:

- topic/ul task/choices

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

choice

Each <choice> element describes one way that the user could accomplish the current step.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Choose a server.</cmd>
  <choices>
    <choice>If you have a remote server you want to test on, type the
IP address or hostname of the server here.</choice>
<choice>If you want to do local testing, just type localhost.</choice>
  </choices>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 orcodeph on page 254 osynph on page 266 ofilepath on page 312 omsgph on page 301 ouserinput on page 314 osystemoutput on page 316 ob on page 238 ou on page 242 oi on page 240 ott on page 243 osup on page 245 osub on page 247 ouicontrol on page 319 omenucascade on page 323 oterm on page 231 oxref on page 86 ocite on page 123 oq on page 127 oboolean on page 234 ostate on page 229 okeyword on page 83 ooption on page 256 oparmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 ocmdname on page 307 omsgnum on page 304 ovarname on page 310 owintitle on page 321 odm on page 205 op on page 77 olq on page 125 onote on page 78 odl on page 98 or parml on page 261 oul on page 92 ool on page 90 osl on page 95 opre on page 119 ocodeblock on page 252 omsgblock on page 303 oscreen on page 326 olines on page 121 ofig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 oimagemap on page 330 oimage on page 110 oobject on page 114 otable on page 130 osimpletable on page 144 oitemgroup on page 225 odraft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 ofn on page 196 oindextermref on page 203 oindexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 odata-about on page 208 oforeign on page 217 ounknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	choices on page 66

Inheritance:

- topic/li task/choice

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

stepresult

The <stepresult> element provides information on the expected outcome of a step. If a user interface is being documented, the outcome could describe a dialog box opening, or the appearance of a progress indicator. Step results are useful to assure a user that they are on track, but should not be used for every step, as this quickly becomes tedious.

Example

```
<steps>
 <step>
  <cmd importance="urgent">Once you have the water place it in the
microwave.</cmd>
  <info>Try not to spill any, as water is very wet.</info>
 </step>
 <step importance="required">
  <cmd>Start the Microwave.</cmd>
  <stepxmp>As an example, push the <b>Start</b> button</stepxmp>
  <stepresult>The Microwave starts running. You should hear it
humming.</stepresult>
 </step>
 <step importance="optional">
  <cmd>Once the water begins to boil, stop the Microwave.</cmd>
 </step>
</steps>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or

	apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or ph on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step on page 49 , substep on page 55

Inheritance:

- topic/itemgroup task/stepresult

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

tutorialinfo

The tutorial info (<tutorialinfo>) element contains additional information that is useful when the task is part of a tutorial.

Example

```
<steps>
 <step>
  <cmd>Do this</cmd>
  <tutorialinfo>In your editor, open the first element and click on
  the dialog.</tutorialinfo>
 </step>
 <step>
  <cmd>Do that</cmd>
  <tutorialinfo>Move the framulator into the foobar box.</tutorialinfo>
 </step>
</steps>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model

ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 orcodeph on page 254 osynph on page 266 ofilepath on page 312 omsgph on page 301 ouserinput on page 314 osystemoutput on page 316 ob on page 238 ou on page 242 oi on page 240 ott on page 243 osup on page 245 osub on page 247 ouicontrol on page 319 omenucascade on page 323 oterm on page 231 oxref on page 86 orcite on page 123 oq on page 127 oboolean on page 234 ostate on page 229 okeyword on page 83 oroption on page 256 oparmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 ocmdname on page 307 omsgnum on page 304 ovarname on page 310 owintitle on page 321 otm on page 205 or on page 77 orlq on page 125 onote on page 78 ordl on page 98 or parml on page 261 oul on page 92 orol on page 90 orsl on page 95 orpre on page 119 ocodeblock on page 252 omsgblock on page 303 oscreen on page 326 olines on page 121 ofig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 oimagemap on page 330 oimage on page 110 oobject on page 114 otable on page 130 osimpletable on page 144 odraft-comment on page 193 orequired-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 oindextermref on page 203 oindexterm on page 199 odata on page 212 odata-about on page 208 oforeign on page 217 ounknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step on page 49 , substep on page 55

Inheritance:

- topic/itemgroup task/tutorialinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

result

The <result> element describes the expected outcome for the task as a whole.

Note: If this is the outcome of a specific step, put this in the <stepresult> element instead.

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
 <titleCreating an SQLJ file</title>
 <taskbody>
  <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
  You cannot add #sqlj statements directly in the Source pane of the
  Workbench.</context>
  <result>The SQLJ file is successfully created when the SQLJ server
  displays the "File Created" dialog.</result>
 </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or i on page 242 or tt on page 240 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or dm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody on page 44

Inheritance:

- topic/section task/result

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

postreq

The <postreq> element describes steps or tasks that the user should do after the successful completion of the current task. It is often supported by links to the next task or tasks in the <related-links> section.

Example

```
<postreq>Notify the proctor upon completing this self-test.</postreq>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)* *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody on page 44

Inheritance:

- topic/section task/postreq

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Glossentry elements

Use the glossentry topic type to define glossary terms. Each glossentry topic should define a single sense of a term. The current OASIS glossentry type is an initial implementation intended to support minimal terminology information; more terminology management capabilities may be added in future releases.

glossentry

The <glossentry> element defines a single sense of a glossary term. The expected book processing is to sort and group the glossary entries based on the localized term so a back-of-the-book glossary can contain a collated list of terms with the definitions of the senses of the terms indented under the terms. The glossary can have a different organization in different languages depending on the translation of the terms. One possible online processing is to associate a hotspot for mentions of terms in <term> elements and display the definition on hover or click. Glossary entries for different term senses can be reused independently of one another.

Example

```
<glossentry id="ddl">
    <glossterm>Data Definition Language</glossterm>
    <glossdef>A formal language used for defining database
schemas....</glossdef>
</glossentry>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, glossary	((glossterm on page 75) then (glossdef on page 74) then (related-links on page 24) *(optional)* then (no-topic-nesting on page 226)*(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	dita on page 193topic on page 10 , concept on page 27 , task on page 43 , reference on page 30

Inheritance:

- topic/topic concept/concept glossentry/glossentry

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	This ID enables topics to be referenced uniquely by topicrefs in DITA maps.	ID		Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. See The conref attribute on page 508 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED	

			http://dita.oas	hitecture/2005/
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	“1.1” (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(topic ui-d) (topic hi-d) (topic pr-d) (topic sw-d) (topic ut-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

glossdef

The <glossdef> element specifies the definition of one sense of a term. If a term has multiple senses, create a separate <glossentry> topic to define each sense.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or tt on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or b on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or fn on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or shortdesc on page 19) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase,	glossentry on page 73

glossary	

Inheritance:

- topic/abstract concept/abstract glossentry/glossdef

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

glossterm

The <glossterm> element specifies the preferred term associated with a definition of a sense. If the same term has multiple senses, create a separate <glossentry> topic for each sense.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, glossary	glossentry on page 73

Inheritance:

- topic/title concept/title glossentry/glossterm

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default	Required?

			Value	
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Body elements

The body elements support the most common types of content authoring for topics: paragraphs, lists, phrases, figures, and other common types of exhibits in a document.

p

A paragraph element (<p>) is a block of text containing a single main idea.

Example

```
<p>
It is probable that <q>temporary</q> or <q>new</q> stars, as these
wonderful apparitions are called, really are <term>conflagrations</term>;
not in the sense of a bonfire or a burning house or city, but in that of
a sudden eruption of <i>inconceivable</i> heat and light, such as would
result from the stripping off the shell of an encrusted sun or the
crashing
together of two mighty orbs flying through space with a hundred times
the velocity of the swiftest cannon-shot.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or dq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)* *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or dq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)* *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on

	page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109note on page 78 ,lq on page 125li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , fig on page 106stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109note on page 78 ,lq on page 125li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , fig on page 106stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109note on page 78 ,lq on page 125li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , fig on page 106stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109note on page 78 ,lq on page 125li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , fig on page 106stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	desc on page 109note on page 78 ,lq on page 125li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , fig on page 106stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141

Inheritance:

- topic/p

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

note

A <note> element contains information, differentiated from the main text, which expands on or calls attention to a particular point.

Tip: Variant types of note (tip, caution, danger, restriction, etc.) can be indicated through values selected on the type attribute. This note is typed as a “tip.”

Example
This example:

```
<note type="tip">Thinking of a seashore, green meadow, or cool
mountain overlook can help you to relax and be more
patient.</note>
```

produces this result:
Tip: Thinking of a seashore, green meadow, or cool mountain overlook can help you to relax and be more patient.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265

reference	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dd on page 105 , fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dd on page 105 , fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141

Inheritance:

- topic/note

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Defines the type of a note. For example, if the note is a tip, the word **Tip** is used to draw the reader's attention to it. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	(note | tip | fastpath | restriction | important | remember | attention | caution | danger | other | -dita-use-con		No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
othertype	Indicates an alternate note type, when the type is not available in the type attribute value list. This value is used as the user-provided note title when the type attribute value is set to "other."	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

ph

The phrase (<ph>) element is used to organize content for reuse or conditional processing (for example, when part of a paragraph applies to a particular audience). It can be used by specializations of DITA to create semantic markup for content at the phrase level, which then allows (but does not require) specific processing or formatting.

Example

```
This was not changed. <ph rev="v5r2">This was updated.</ph> This was not.
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data on page 212, title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, li on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dthd on page 101, ddhd on page 102, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, figgroup on page 108, pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, cite on page 123, xref on page 86 , entry on page 141, booklibrary on page 368, mainbooktitle on page 384 , booktitlealt on page 372, organizationname on page 476
map	data on page 212, title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, li on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dthd on page 101, ddhd on page 102, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, figgroup on page 108, pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, cite on page 123, xref on page 86 , entry on page 141
ditabase	data on page 212, title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, li on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dthd on page 101, ddhd on page 102, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, figgroup on page 108, pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, cite on page 123, xref on page 86 , entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326, b on page 238, u on page 242, i on page 240, tt on page 243, sup on page 245, sub on page 247, codeph on page 254, codeblock on page 252 pt on page 264, pd on page 265, fragref on page 279, synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212, title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, li on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dthd on page 101, ddhd on page 102, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, figgroup on page 108, pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, cite on page 123, xref on page 86 , entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on

	page 23 , linkinfo on page 191screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264 , pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 ,li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101ddhd on page 102dt on page 104dd on page 105figgroup on page 108pre on page 119lines on page 121ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123xref on page 86 ,entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264 , pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 ,li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101ddhd on page 102dt on page 104dd on page 105figgroup on page 108pre on page 119lines on page 121ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123xref on page 86 ,entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264 , pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 ,li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101ddhd on page 102dt on page 104dd on page 105figgroup on page 108pre on page 119lines on page 121ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123xref on page 86 ,entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 ,li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101ddhd on page 102dt on page 104dd on page 105figgroup on page 108pre on page 119lines on page 121ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123xref on page 86 ,entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

- topic/ph

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

keyword

The <keyword> element identifies a keyword or token, such as a single value from an enumerated list, the name of a command or parameter, product name, or a lookup key for a message.

“Keyword” means any text that has a unique or key-like value. For example, a product name. Where there is a element that has a better meaning for what you are describing, use that element. The keyword element is a generic element; use it when no other element applies. The keyword element can also be used to contain reusable text.

Specific markup recommendations:

- Use apiname for API names and cmdname for command names.
- Term should be used for inline paragraph definitions; to indicate what you're defining.
- PH should be used for general phrases; when you think that keyword is not appropriate.
- Inside syntax diagrams and syntax phrases, use kwd to indicate a programming keyword.
- In metadata, a keyword is used to create additional XHTML metadata.

Specialized elements derived from <keyword> may also have extended processing, such as different formatting or automatic indexing.

When DITA topics are output to XHTML, any <keyword> or <indexterm> elements in the <keywords> metadata element are placed in the Web page metadata. In addition, any index terms in this context are also used for supported index processing (for example, for print versions).

```
<p>The <keyword>assert</keyword> pragma statement allows messages to be
passed
to the emulator, pre-compiler, etc..</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(text data or tm on page 205)* *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data on page 212, title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dthd on page 101, ddhd on page 102, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, figgroup on page 108, pre on page 119, lines

	on page 121ph on page 80 , alt on page 113stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196indexterm on page 199index-base on page 204cite on page 123xref on page 86 ,entry on page 141author on page 153source on page 178publisher on page 173copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156keywords on page 164prodname on page 171brand on page 155series on page 177platform on page 169prognum on page 172featnum on page 163component on page 157 , linktext on page 190searchtitle on page 15 , person on page 429organization on page 427summary on page 440printlocation on page 430bookpartno on page 408booknumber on page 404booklibrary on page 368mainbooktitle on page 384booktitlealt on page 372index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340organizationname on page 476otherinfo on page 477 , addressdetails on page 450locality on page 468localityname on page 469administrativearea on page 451 , thoroughfare on page 484emailaddress on page 456url on page 485
map	data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 ,li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101ddhd on page 102dt on page 104dd on page 105figgroup on page 108pre on page 119lines on page 121ph on page 80 , alt on page 113stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196indexterm on page 199index-base on page 204cite on page 123xref on page 86 ,entry on page 141author on page 153source on page 178publisher on page 173copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156keywords on page 164prodname on page 171brand on page 155series on page 177platform on page 169prognum on page 172featnum on page 163component on page 157 , linktext on page 190searchtitle on page 15 , index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
ditabase	data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 ,li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101ddhd on page 102dt on page 104dd on page 105figgroup on page 108pre on page 119lines on page 121ph on page 80 , alt on page 113stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196indexterm on page 199index-base on page 204cite on page 123xref on page 86 ,entry on page 141author on page 153source on page 178publisher on page 173copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156keywords on page 164prodname on page 171brand on page 155series on page 177platform on page 169prognum on page 172featnum on page 163component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190linkinfo on page 191prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 ,li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101ddhd on page 102dt on page 104dd on page 105figgroup on page 108pre on page 119lines on page 121ph on page 80 , alt on page 113stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196indexterm on page 199index-base on page 204cite on page 123xref on page 86 ,entry on page 141author on page 153source on page 178publisher on page 173copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156keywords on page 164prodname on page 171brand on page 155series on page 177platform on page 169prognum on page 172featnum on page 163component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190linkinfo on page 191uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295 , pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340

task	data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 q on page 127 sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 ddhd on page 102 dt on page 104 dd on page 105 figgroup on page 108 pre on page 119 lines on page 121 ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 indexterm on page 199 index-base on page 204 cite on page 123 xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 author on page 153 source on page 178 publisher on page 173 copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 keywords on page 164 prodname on page 171 brand on page 155 series on page 177 platform on page 169 prognum on page 172 featnum on page 163 component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 linkinfo on page 191 prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319 screen on page 326 b on page 238 u on page 242 i , on page 240 tt on page 243 sup on page 245 sub on page 247 codeph on page 254 codeblock on page 252 var on page 287 oper on page 290 delim on page 292 sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 pd on page 265 fragref on page 279 synnote on page 283 repsep on page 297 msgph on page 301 msgblock on page 303 filepath on page 312 userinput on page 314 systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 index-see on page 337 index-see-also on page 338 index-sort-as on page 340
concept	data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 q on page 127 sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 ddhd on page 102 dt on page 104 dd on page 105 figgroup on page 108 pre on page 119 lines on page 121 ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 indexterm on page 199 index-base on page 204 cite on page 123 xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 author on page 153 source on page 178 publisher on page 173 copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 keywords on page 164 prodname on page 171 brand on page 155 series on page 177 platform on page 169 prognum on page 172 featnum on page 163 component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 linkinfo on page 191 uicontrol on page 319 screen on page 326 b on page 238 u on page 242 i , on page 240 tt on page 243 sup on page 245 sub on page 247 codeph on page 254 codeblock on page 252 var on page 287 oper on page 290 delim on page 292 sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 pd on page 265 fragref on page 279 synnote on page 283 repsep on page 297 msgph on page 301 msgblock on page 303 filepath on page 312 userinput on page 314 systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 index-see on page 337 index-see-also on page 338 index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 q on page 127 sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 ddhd on page 102 dt on page 104 dd on page 105 figgroup on page 108 pre on page 119 lines on page 121 ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 indexterm on page 199 index-base on page 204 cite on page 123 xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 author on page 153 source on page 178 publisher on page 173 copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 keywords on page 164 prodname on page 171 brand on page 155 series on page 177 platform on page 169 prognum on page 172 featnum on page 163 component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 linkinfo on page 191 refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319 screen on page 326 b on page 238 u on page 242 i , on page 240 tt on page 243 sup on page 245 sub on page 247 codeph on page 254 codeblock on page 252 var on page 287 oper on page 290 delim on page 292 sep on page 295 pt on page 264 pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 synnote on page 283 repsep on page 297 msgph on page 301 msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 userinput on page 314 systemoutput on page 316 coords on page 333 index-see on page 337 index-see-also on page 338 index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 q on page 127 sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 ddhd on page 102 dt on page 104 dd on page 105 figgroup on page 108 pre on page 119 lines on page 121 ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 indexterm on page 199 index-base on page 204 cite on page 123 xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 author on page 153 source on page 178 publisher on page 173 copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 keywords on page 164 prodname on page 171 brand on page 155 series on

	page 177platform on page 169prognum on page 172featnum on page 163component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190linkinfo on page 191glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

- topic/keyword

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

xref

Use the cross-reference (<xref>) element to link to a different location within the current topic, or a different topic within the same help system, or to external sources, such as Web pages, or to a location in another topic. The *href* attribute on the <xref> element provides the location of the target.

Typically it is best to restrict yourself to linking to reference topics where the content of the target is clear from the <xref>'s text, for example API names and their descriptions. With other information types, it may be less clear to the user whether they should follow the link, and often they will, thereby missing important information in following paragraphs. Therefore it is a good idea to use links at the end of the topic, in the < related-links on page 24 > element, wherever possible, rather than linking from within body content using <xref>. Links at the end of a topic can also be managed from outside the topic, using DITA maps: this allows topics to be quickly integrated into new contexts without breaking links.

Examples

Here's an example of a cross-reference to another topic; that topic's title will be used as the link text.

```
<p>Background information about DITA is provided in the topic titled
<xref href="whatsdita.dita#tmmdita"></xref>.</p>
```

Here's an example of a cross-reference to another topic; the supplied text will be used as the link text

```
<p><xref href="whatsdita.dita#tmmdita">Background information about
DITA</xref> is provided
free of charge.</p>
```

If you are linking to anything within a topic, you should use the following format in the href attribute:

```
filename.xml#topicid/elementid
```

If you are linking within the same file, you can leave off the "filename.xml" part. So, for a section with the ID "mysection", you should use:

```
#topicid/mysection
```

For a list item within that section, assuming the item has an ID of "mylist", use

```
#topicid/mylist
```

Regardless of how deeply the target element is nested, the only important pieces are the ID of the containing topic, and the ID of the target element. IDs of topics in DITA must be unique within a file, but IDs of other elements only need to be unique within the topic. You need to be sure that the topic ID is part of your reference.

If your URL has an ampersand in it, you need to code that using a symbol. For example; for this URL:

```
http://www.ibm.com/docview.wss?rs=757&context=SSVNX5
```

You need to enter the & in the Href attribute as follows:

```
<xref href="http://www.ibm.com/docview.wss?rs=757&amp;context=SSVNX5">
Part number SSVNX5</xref>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or desc on page 109)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or desc on page 109)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, fig on page 106, figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, organizationname on page 476

map	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, fig on page 106, figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141
ditabase	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, fig on page 106, figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326, b on page 238, u on page 242, i, on page 240, tt on page 243 , sup on page 245, sub on page 247, codeph on page 254, codeblock on page 252, pt on page 264, pd on page 265, synnote on page 283, area on page 332
topic	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, fig on page 106, figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, screen on page 326, b on page 238, u on page 242, i, on page 240, tt on page 243, sup on page 245, sub on page 247, codeph on page 254, codeblock on page 252, pt on page 264, pd on page 265 , synnote on page 283, area on page 332
task	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, fig on page 106, figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326, b on page 238, u on page 242, i, on page 240, tt on page 243 , sup on page 245, sub on page 247, codeph on page 254, codeblock on page 252, pt on page 264, pd on page 265, synnote on page 283, area on page 332
concept	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, fig on page 106, figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, screen on page 326, b on page 238, u on page 242, i, on page 240, tt on page 243, sup on page 245, sub on page 247, codeph on page 254, codeblock on page 252, pt on page 264, pd on page 265 , synnote on page 283, area on page 332
reference	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, fig on page 106, figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326, b on page 238, u on page 242, i, on page 240, tt on page 243, sup on page 245, sub on page 247, codeph on page 254, codeblock on page 252, pt on page 264, pd on page 265, synnote on page 283 , area on page 332
glossary	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dt on page 104, dd on page 105, fig on page 106, figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119, lines on page 121, ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326, b on page 238, u on page 242, i, on page 240 , tt on page 243, sup on page 245, sub on page 247, codeph on page 254, codeblock on page 252, pt on page 264, pd on page 265, synnote on page 283, area on page 332

Inheritance:

- topic/xref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file, or to a specific element inside a DITA topic. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA content is targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicID"`
	`  href="#topicID/elemID`
	`Target in a different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicID"`
	`href="fname.dita#topicID/elemID"`
	Elements inside a topic need to have their location scoped by the containing topic's ID. Only the id of the target element and the topic that contains it matter: id's on any other containing elements (for example an id on the <body> element) are not part of the link syntax.
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

ol

An ordered list (<ol>) is a list of items sorted by sequence or order of importance.

Example

```
Here are the colors of the rainbow in order of appearance from top to
bottom:
<ol>
<li>Red</li>
<li>Orange</li>
<li>Yellow</li>
<li>Green</li>
<li>Blue</li>
<li>Indigo</li>
<li>Violet</li>
</ol>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(li on page 94)*(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225

	, dd on page 105fig on page 106stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105fig on page 106stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105fig on page 106stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105fig on page 106stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105fig on page 106stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	desc on page 109p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125li on page 94 ,itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105fig on page 106stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141

Inheritance:

- topic/ol

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are: **yes** Indicates compact spacing. **no** Indicates expanded spacing. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

ul

In an unordered list (<ul>), the order of the list items is not significant. List items are typically styled on output with a "bullet" character, depending on nesting level.

Example

```
<ul>
 <li>This is an item in an unordered list.</li>
 <li>To separate it from other items in the list, the
 formatter puts a bullet beside it.</li>
 <li>The following paragraph, contained in the list item
 element, is part of the list item which contains it.
 <p>This is the contained paragraph.</p></li>
 <li>This is the last list item in our unordered list.</li>
</ul>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(li on page 94)*(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 ,

	linkinfo on page 191 pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109 p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 fig on page 106 stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109 p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 fig on page 106 stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109 p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 fig on page 106 stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	desc on page 109 p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 fig on page 106 stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 entry on page 141

Inheritance:

- topic/ul

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are: **yes** Indicates compact spacing. **no** Indicates expanded spacing. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

li

A list (<li>) item is a single item in an ordered <ol> or unordered <ul> list. When a DITA topic is formatted for output, numbers and alpha characters are usually output with list items in ordered lists, while bullets and dashes are usually output with list items in unordered lists.

Example

```
<ul>
<li>This is an item in an unordered list.</li>
</ul>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or itemgroup on page 225 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or itemgroup on page 225 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	ul on page 92 , ol on page 90

Inheritance:

- topic/li

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

sl

The simple list (<sl>) element contains a simple list of items of short, phrase-like content, such as in documenting the materials in a kit or package.

On output, the list should have no bullets, on the assumption that each item is short enough to fit on one line, and needs no additional differentiation from its neighbors.

Example
In a reference topic discussing related modules, the following sample markup could be used:

```
<section><title>Messages</title>
 <p>Messages from the ags_open module are identical with messages
from:</p>
 <sl>
  <sli>ags_read</sli>
  <sli>ags_write</sli>
  <sli>ags_close</sli>
 </sl>
</section>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(sli on page 97)*(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 ,

	linkinfo on page 191, conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141

Inheritance:

- topic/sl

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are: **yes** Indicates compact spacing. **no** Indicates expanded spacing. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

sli

A simple list item (<sli>) is a single item in a simple list <sl>. Simple list items have phrase or text content, adequate for describing package contents, for example. When a DITA topic is formatted for output, the items of a simple list are placed each on its own line, with no other prefix such as a number (as in an ordered list) or bullet (as in an unordered list).

Example
See sl on page 95 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	sl on page 95

Inheritance:

- topic/sli

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

dl

A definition list (<dl>) is a list of terms and corresponding definitions. The term (<dt>) is usually flush left. The description or definition (<dd>) is usually either indented and on the next line, or on the same line to the right of the term.

You can also provide an optional heading for the terms and definitions, using the <dlhead> element, which contains header elements for those columns. The default formatting for the <dlhead> looks like a table with a heading row.

Examples
Simple:

```
<dl>
<dlentry>
<dt>Bytes returned</dt>
<dd>The number of bytes of data returned.</dd>
</dlentry>
<dlentry>
<dt>Bytes available</dt>
<dd>The number of bytes of data available to be returned.</dd>
</dlentry>
<dlentry><dt>Handle</dt>
<dd>The returned handle value</dd>
</dlentry>
</dl>
```

With heading:

```
<dl>
 <dlhead>
  <dthd>Image File View Selection</dthd>
  <ddhd>Resulting Information</ddhd>
 </dlhead>
 <dlentry>
  <dt>File Type</dt>
  <dd>Image's file extension</dd>
 </dlentry>
 <dlentry>
  <dt>Image Class</dt>
  <dd>Image is raster, vector, metafile or 3D</dd>
 </dlentry>
 <dlentry>
  <dt>Number of pages</dt>
  <dd>Number of pages in the image</dd>
 </dlentry>
 <dlentry>
  <dt>Fonts</dt>
  <dd>Names of the fonts contained within a vector image</dd>
 </dlentry>
```

```
</dl>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((dlhead on page 100 *(optional)* then (dlentry on page 103 *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	desc on page 109, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105, fig on page 106, stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141

Inheritance:

- topic/dl

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are: **yes** Indicates compact spacing. **no** Indicates expanded spacing. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

dlhead

The <dlhead> element contains optional headings for the term and description columns in a definition list. The definition list heading contains a heading <dthd> for the column of terms and an optional heading <ddhd>for the column of descriptions.

Example

See dl on page 98 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((dthd on page 101*(optional)* then (ddhd on page 102*(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	dl on page 98

Inheritance:

- topic/dlhead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

dthd

The definition term heading (<dthd>) element is contained in a definition list head (<dlhead>) and provides an optional heading for the column of terms in a description list.

Example
See dl on page 98 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	dlhead on page 100

Inheritance:

- topic/dthd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

ddhd

The definition descriptions heading (<ddhd>) element contains an optional heading or title for a column of descriptions or definitions in a definition list

Example
See dl on page 98 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	dlhead on page 100

Inheritance:

- topic/ddhd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

dlentry

In a definition list, each list item is defined by the definition list entry (<dlentry>) element. The definition list entry element includes a term <dt> and one or more definitions or descriptions <dd> of that term.

Example
See dl on page 98

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((dt on page 104*(one or more)* then (dd on page 105*(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	dl on page 98

Inheritance:

- topic/dlentry

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

dt

The definition term <dt> element contains a term in a definition list entry.

Example
See dl on page 98 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap,	dlentry on page 103

map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	

Inheritance:

- topic/dt

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

dd

The definition description (<dd>) element contains the description of a term in a definition list entry.

Example
See dl on page 98

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or itemgroup on page 225 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or itemgroup on page 225 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or

	data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	dlentry on page 103

Inheritance:

- topic/dd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

fig

The figure (<fig>) element is a display context (sometimes called an “exhibit”) with an optional title for a wide variety of content. Most commonly, the figure element contains an image element (a graphic or artwork), but it can contain several kinds of text objects as well. A title is placed inside the figure element to provide a caption to describe the content.

Example

```
<fig expanse="column"><title>The Handshake</title>
<image href="handshake.jpg" alt="The Handshake"/>
</fig>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (desc on page 109 *(optional)* then (figgroup on page 108 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or simpletable on page 144 or xref on page 86 or fn on page 196 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*)

map, bookmap	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (desc on page 109 *(optional)* then (figgroup on page 108 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or simpletable on page 144 or xref on page 86 or fn on page 196 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , pd on page 265
task	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141

Inheritance:

- topic/fig

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at %display-atts; on page 496	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

figgroup

The <figgroup> element is used only for specialization at this time. Figure groups can be used to contain multiple cross-references, footnotes or keywords, but not multipart images. Multipart images in DITA should be represented by a suitable media type displayed by the <object> element.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (figgroup on page 108 or xref on page 86 or fn on page 196 or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or i on page 242 or tt on page 240 or dt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 *(any number)*)
map, bookmap	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (figgroup on page 108 or xref on page 86 or fn on page 196 or ph on page 80 or keyword on page 83) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	fig on page 106 , figgroup on page 108

Inheritance:

- topic/figgroup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

desc

The <desc> element contains the description of the current element. A description should provide more information than the title. This is its behavior in fig/table/linklist, for example. In xref/link, it provides a description of the target; processors that support it may choose to display this as hover help. In object, it contains alternate content for use when in contexts that cannot display the object.

Example

```
<fig><title>The Handshake</title>
<desc>This image shows two hands clasped in a formal,
business-like handshake.</desc>
<image href="handshake.jpg">
 <alt>The handshake</alt>
</image>
</fig>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	fig on page 106 , object on page 114 , xref on page 86 , table on page 130 , link on page 182 , linklist on page 184
map, bookmap	fig on page 106 , object on page 114 , xref on page 86 , table on page 130

Inheritance:

- topic/desc

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

image

Include artwork or images in a DITA topic by using the <image> element. The <image> element has optional attributes that indicate whether the placement of the included graphic or artwork should be inline (like a button or icon) or on a separate line for a larger image. There are also optional attributes that indicate the size to which the included graphic or artwork should be scaled. An href attribute is required on the image element, as this attribute creates a pointer to the image, and allows the output formatting processor to bring the image into the text flow. To make the intent of the image more accessible for users using screen readers or text-only readers, always include a description of the image's content in the alt element.

Example

```
<image href="bike.gif" placement="break"><alt>Two-wheeled
bicycle</alt></image>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(alt on page 113*)(optional)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data on page 212, title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, thd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, xref on page 86 , entry on page 141, booklibrary on page 368, mainbooktitle on page 384, booktitlealt on page 372, organizationname on page 476

map	data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 xref on page 86 , entry on page 141
ditabase	data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 pt on page 264 pd on page 265 imagemap on page 330
topic	data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 uicontrol on page 319 pt on page 264 pd on page 265 imagemap on page 330
task	data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319 pt on page 264 pd on page 265 imagemap on page 330
concept	data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 conbody on page 28 , uicontrol on page 319 pt on page 264 pd on page 265 imagemap on page 330
reference	data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319 pt on page 264 pd on page 265 imagemap on page 330
glossary	data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 conbody on page 28 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 pt on page 264 pd on page 265 imagemap on page 330

Inheritance:

- topic/image

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	The relative path or URL to the image. The href attribute uses conventional URL syntax to point to the resource: `href="../images/construction.gif`	CDATA	#IMPLIED	Yes
longdescref	A reference to a textual description of the graphic or object. This attribute supports creating accessible content. It uses standard href syntax. This may be a reference to another DITA topic, or to a non-DITA description. For examples of how this attribute is used in output, see this this topic on long descriptions .	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
height	Indicates the vertical dimension for the resulting image display. If necessary, the image is scaled to the specified size. The value of this attribute is a real number optionally following by a unit of measure from the set of pc, pt, px, in, cm, mm, em (picas, points, pixels, inches, centimeters, millimeters, and ems respectively). The default unit is px (pixels). Possible values include: "5", "5in", and "10.5cm". If a height value is specified and no width value is specified, the width will be scaled by the same factor as the height. If both a height value and width value are specified, some implementations may not be able to scale the two directions by a different factor and may therefore ignore one of the two values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
width	Indicates the horizontal dimension for the resulting image display. If necessary, the image is scaled to the specified size. The value of this attribute is a real number optionally following by a unit of measure from the set of pc, pt, px, in, cm, mm, em (picas, points, pixels, inches, centimeters, millimeters, and ems respectively). The default unit is px (pixels). Possible values include: "5", "5in", and "10.5cm". If a width value is specified and no height value is specified, the height will be scaled by the same factor as the width. If both a height value and width value are specified, some implementations may not be able to scale the two directions by a different factor and may therefore ignore one of the two values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
align	Controls the horizontal alignment of an image when placement is specified as	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	"break." Allowable values (processor-validated) are: left, right, center, and current.			
scale	Specifies a percentage by which to scale the image in the absence of any specified image height or width; a value of 100 implies that the image should be presented at its intrinsic size. If a value has been specified for this image's height or width attribute (or both), the scale attribute is ignored.	NMTOKEN whose value space is an unsigned integer	#IMPLIED	No
placement	Indicates whether an image should be displayed inline or separated from the surrounding text. The processing default is inline. Allowable values are: inline or break. See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on the conref value.	(inline | break | -dita-use-con	inline	No
alt *(deprecated)*	Alternative text that describes the image to provide accessibility to page readers, or provides a text description when an image cannot be displayed by the user's software. The alt attribute is deprecated; use the alt element instead.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

alt

The alt element provides alternate text for an image. It is equivalent to the alt attribute on the image element; the attribute is deprecated, so the alt element should be used instead. As an element, alt provides direct text entry within an XML editor and is more easily accessed than an attribute for translation.

Example

The markup for alt text within an image looks like this:

```
<image href="tip-ing.jpg">
  <alt>Here's a Tip!</alt>
</image>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	image on page 110

Inheritance:

- topic/alt

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

object

DITA's <object> element corresponds to the HTML <object> element.

The <object> element allows authors to include animated images, applets, plug-ins, ActiveX controls, video clips, and other multimedia objects in a topic for rendering after transformation to HTML.

To support Flash animations and movies, the value `swflash.cab` is checked in the codebase attribute. That enables the OBJECT tag in the HTML to display Flash objects in Intenet Explorer. The enable these to display in browsers such as NetScape and FireFox, an EMBED tag is also added to the HTML. Note that while the Embed tag is required to display these objects, the Embed tag is not in the XHTML 1.0 Transitional tag set.

Example
Output processors may need to modify data to enable compatible function across various browsers, so these examples are only representative:

```
<p>Cutting the keys from the system unit:</p>
<object classid="clsid:D27CDB6E-AE6D-11cf-96B8-444553540000"
 codebase="http://download.macromedia.com/pub/shockwave/cabs/
flash/swflash.cab#version=6,0,0,0"
 data="cutkey370.swf"
```

```
 type="application/x-shockwave-flash"
 height="280"
 width="370"
 id="cutkey370">
 <desc>A description of the task</desc>
 <param name="movie" value="cutkey370.swf"/>
 <param name="quality" value="high"/>
 <param name="bgcolor" value="#FFFFFF"/>
</object>
```

```
<p>What's EIM?</p>
<object classid="clsid:D27CDB6E-AE6D-11cf-96B8-444553540000"
 codebase="http://download.macromedia.com/pub/shockwave/cabs/
flash/swflash.cab#version=6,0,0,0"
 data="eim.swf"
 height="400"
 width="500"
 id="eim">
 <desc>Some great, glorious info</desc>
 <param name="movie" value="eim.swf"/>
 <param name="quality" value="high"/>
 <param name="bgcolor" value="#FFFFFF"/>
 <param name="pluginspace"
 value="http://www.macromedia.com/go/getflashplayer"/>
</object>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((desc on page 109) *(optional)* then (param on page 118 *(any number)* then (foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196 , entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	data on page 212, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196 , entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , pd on page 265
task	data on page 212, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196 , entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	data on page 212, p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196 ,

	entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	data on page 212p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196 , entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	data on page 212p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196 , entry on page 141

Inheritance:

- topic/object

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
declare	When this attribute is set to declare, the current object definition is a declaration only. The object must be instantiated by a later nested object definition referring to this declaration.	declare	#IMPLIED	No
classid	Contains a URL that specifies the location of an object's implementation. It can be used together with the data attribute which is specified relative to the value of the codebase attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
codebase	Specifies the base path (a URL) used for resolving the URL values given for classid, data, and archive attributes. If codebase is not set, the default is the base URL of the current document.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
data	Contains a reference to the location of an object's data. If this attribute is a URL, it is specified relative to the value of the codebase attribute. If this attribute is set, the type attribute should also be set.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Indicates the content type for the data specified by the data attribute. This attribute should be set when the data attribute is set to avoid loading unsupported content types. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (No default type)	No
codetype	Indicates the content type for the data specified by the classid attribute. This attribute should be set when the classid attribute is set to avoid loading unsupported content types. If this attribute value is not set, the default is the value of the type attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

archive	Specifies a space-separated list of URLs indicating resources needed by the object. These resources may include those URLs specified by the classid and data attributes. Preloading these resources usually results in faster loadtimes for objects. The URLs in the list should be relative to the URL specified in the codebase attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
standby	Contains a message to be displayed while an object is loading.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
height	Indicates the vertical dimension for the resulting object display. If necessary, the object is scaled to the specified size. The value of this attribute is a real number optionally following by a unit of measure from the set of pc, pt, px, in, cm, mm, em (picas, points, pixels, inches, centimeters, millimeters, and ems respectively). The default unit is px (pixels). Possible values include: "5", "5in", and "10.5cm". If a height value is specified and no width value is specified, the width will be scaled by the same factor as the height. If both a height value and width value are specified, some implementations may not be able to scale the two directions by a different factor and may therefore ignore one of the two values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
width	Indicates the horizontal dimension for the resulting object display. If necessary, the object is scaled to the specified size. The value of this attribute is a real number optionally following by a unit of measure from the set of pc, pt, px, in, cm, mm, em (picas, points, pixels, inches, centimeters, millimeters, and ems respectively). The default unit is px (pixels). Possible values include: "5", "5in", and "10.5cm". If a width value is specified and no height value is specified, the height will be scaled by the same factor as the width. If both a height value and width value are specified, some implementations may not be able to scale the two directions by a different factor and may therefore ignore one of the two values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
usemap	Indicates that a client-side image map is to be used. An image map specifies active geometric regions of an included object and assigns a link to each region. When a link is selected, a document may be retrieved or a program may run on the server.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
tabindex	Position the object in tabbing order.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

longdescref	A reference to a textual description of the graphic or object. This attribute supports creating accessible content. It uses standard href syntax. This may be a reference to another DITA topic, or to a non-DITA description. For examples of how this attribute is used in output, see this this topic on long descriptions .	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

param

The parameter (<param>) element specifies a set of values that may be required by an <object> at runtime. Any number of <param> elements may appear in the content of an object in any order, but must be placed at the start of the content of the enclosing object. This element is comparable to the XHMTL <param> element.

Example
See object on page 114 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	object on page 114

Inheritance:

- topic/param

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	The name of the parameter.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
valuetype	Specifies the type of the value attribute. Allowed values are: **data** A value of data means that the value will be evaluated and passed to the object's implementation as a string. **ref** A value of ref indicates that the value of valuetype is a URL that designates a resource where run-time values are stored. This allows support tools to identify URLs that are given as parameters. **object** A value of object indicates that the value of valuetype is an identifier that refers to an object declaration in the document. The identifier must be the value of the ID attribute set for the declared object element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	This attribute specifies the content type of the resource designated by the value attribute only in the case where *valuetype* is set to “ref” . This attribute specifies for the user agent the type of values that will be found at the URI designated by value. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (No default type)	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

pre

The preformatted element (<pre>) preserves line breaks and spaces entered manually by the author in the content of the element, and also presents the content in a monospaced

type font (depending on your output formatting processor). Do not use <pre> when a more semantically specific element is appropriate, such as <codeblock>.

Example

```
<pre>
MEMO: programming team fun day
Remember to bring a kite, softball glove, or other favorite
outdoor accessory to tomorrow's fun day outing at Zilker Park.
Volunteers needed for the dunking booth.
</pre>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on

	page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141, abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191, refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on page 141

Inheritance:

- topic/pre

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at %display-atts; on page 496	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, xml:space	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

lines

The <lines> element may be used to represent dialogs, lists, text fragments, and so forth. The <lines> element is similar to <pre> in that hard line breaks are preserved, but the font style is not set to monospace, and extra spaces inside the lines are not preserved.

Example

```
On a trip to the beach, don't forget:
<lines>
suntan lotion
sunglasses
a beach towel
</lines>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task,	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or on page 238 or on page 242

reference, concept	or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or ucontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141

Inheritance:

- topic/lines

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at %display-atts; on page 496	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, xml:space	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

cite

The <cite> element is used when you need a bibliographic citation that refers to a book or article. It specifically identifies the title of the resource.

Example

```
<p>The online article <cite>Specialization in the Darwin Information
Typing
Architecture</cite> provides a detailed explanation of how to define new
topic types.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125, q on page 127, sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225, dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148, draft-comment on page 193, fn on page 196, entry on

	page 141organizationname on page 476
map	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141
ditabase	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265synnote on page 283
topic	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265synnote on page 283
task	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265synnote on page 283
concept	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265synnote on page 283
reference	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265synnote on page 283
glossary	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125q on page 127sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

- topic/cite

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

lq

The long quote (<lq>) element indicates content quoted from another source. Use the quote element <q> for short, inline quotations, and long quote <lq> for quotations that are too long for inline use, following normal guidelines for quoting other sources. You can store a URL to the source of the quotation in the *href* attribute; the href value may point to a DITA topic.

Example

```
<p>This is the first line of the address that
Abraham Lincoln delivered on November 19, 1863 for the dedication
of the cemetery at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania.</p>
<lq>Four score and seven years ago our fathers brought forth on this
continent a new
nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all
men
are created equal.</lq>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or tt on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or b on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or ph on page 77 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or ph on page 77 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on

	page 208 dforeign on page 217 ounknown on page 221 *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 entry on page 141 abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 draft-comment on page 193 fn on page 196 entry on page 141

Inheritance:

- topic/lq

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A hyperlink representing a bibliographic citation to resources that can be accessed by browsers (meaning a URL). The href attribute identifies the destination of the resource using conventional URL syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Indicates the location of the source of the quote. Note that this differs from the type	(external | internal |	#IMPLIED	No

	attribute on many other DITA elements. Allowable values are: **external** the href is to a Web site **internal** the href is to a DITA topic **bibliographic** the href is to a specialized bibliographic topic. There is not currently a standard bibliographic topic type at OASIS. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	bibliographic | -dita-use-con		
reftitle	The title of the document or topic being quoted.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

q

A quotation element (<q>) indicates content quoted from another source. This element is used for short quotes which are displayed inline. Use the long quote element (<lq>) for quotations that should be set off from the surrounding text.

Example

```
George said, <q>Disengage the power supply before servicing the unit.</q>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141booklibrary on page 368mainbooktitle on page 384booktitlealt on page 372 , organizationname on page 476
map	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141
ditabase	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
topic	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
task	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245 , sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
concept	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279synnote on page 283

reference	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
glossary	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148draft-comment on page 193fn on page 196cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

- topic/q

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Table elements

DITA topics support two types of tables. One is the most common table format used in industry, the <CALS table> (or more recently known also as the Oasis Table Exchange Model). The CALS table supports the spanning of multiple rows or columns for special layout or organizational needs, and provides a wide variety of controls over the display properties of the data and even the table structure itself.

The other table structure in DITA is called <simpletable>. As the name implies, it is structurally less sophisticated than the CALS table, and can be used as a very simple, regular table for which close control of formatting is not as important. However, the main advantage of simpletable is for describing lists of data with regular headings, such as telephone directory listings, display adapter configuration data, or API properties.

table

The <table> element organizes arbitrarily complex relationships of tabular information. This standard table markup allows column or row spanning and table captions or descriptions. An optional title allowed inside the table element provides a caption to describe the table.

See simpletable on page 144 for a simplified table model that can be specialized to represent more regular relationships of data.

The DITA table is based on the OASIS Exchange Table Model, augmented with DITA attributes which enable it for specialization, conref, and other DITA processing. In addition, the table includes a desc element, which enables table description that is parallel with figure description.

In DITA tables, in place of the expanse attribute used by other DITA elements, the pgwide attribute is used in order to conform with the OASIS Exchange Table Model. This attribute has a similar semantic (1=page width; 0=resize to galley or column).

Note: The scale attribute represents a stylistic markup property that is maintained for now in tables for legacy purposes. External stylesheets should enable less dependency on this attribute. You should use the scale attribute judiciously in your topics.

Example
Source:

```
<table>
<tgroup cols="2">
<colspec colname="COLSPEC0" colwidth="121*"/>
<colspec colname="COLSPEC1" colwidth="76*"/>
<thead>
<row>
<entry colname="COLSPEC0" valign="top">Animal</entry>
<entry colname="COLSPEC1" valign="top">Gestation</entry>
</row>
</thead>
<tbody>
<row>
<entry>Elephant (African and Asian)</entry>
<entry>19-22 months</entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry>Giraffe</entry>
<entry>15 months</entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry>Rhinoceros</entry>
<entry>14-16 months</entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry>Hippopotamus</entry>
```

```
<entry>7 1/2 months</entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</table>
```

Formatted output:

Animal	Gestation
Elephant (African and Asian)	19-22 months
Giraffe	15 months
Rhinoceros	14-16 months
Hippopotamus	7 1/2 months

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (desc on page 109) *(optional)*) *(optional)* then (tgroup on page 133) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , draft-comment on page 193abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , draft-comment on page 193abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , pd on page 265
task	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , draft-comment on page 193abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , draft-comment on page 193abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , draft-comment on page 193abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , draft-comment on page 193

Inheritance:

- topic/table

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
frame	Specifies which portion of a border should surround the element. Allowable values are: **top** Draw a line before the element **bottom** Draw a line after the element **topbot** Draw a line both before and after the element **all** Draw a box around the element **sides** Draw a line at each side of the element **none** Don't draw any lines around this element **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information. Some DITA processors or output formats may not be able to support all values.	(top | bottom | topbot | all | sides | none | -dita-use-conref-targ	#IMPLIED	No
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
pgwide	Determines the horizontal placement of the element. Supported values are 1 and 0, although these are not mandated by the DTD. For PDF, the value "1" places the element on the left page margin; "0" aligns the element with the left margin of the current text line and takes indention into account. For XHTML, the table surrounds the table data. Either value sets the table width to 100%.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

rowheader	This attribute specifies whether the content of the first column in a table contains row headings. In the same way that a column header introduces a table column, the row header introduces the table row. This attribute makes tables whose first column contains row headings more readable on output. Allowable values are: **firstcol** The first column contains the row headings. **norowheader** Indicates that no column contains row headings. This is the processing default. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(firstCol | norowheader| -dita-use-conref-targ	#IMPLIED	No
scale	Specifies a percentage, selected from an enumerated list, that is used to resize fonts in relation to the normal text size. This attribute is primarily useful for print-oriented display. The scale attribute provides an acknowledged style-based property directly on DITA elements. For the table and fig elements, the intent of the property is to allow authors to adjust font sizes on the content of the containing element, primarily for print accomodation. An image in these contexts is to be scaled only by its own direct scale property. If not specifically scaled, such an image is unchanged by the scale property of its parent table or fig.	(50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 | -dita-use-conref-targ on page 509)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

tgroup

The <tgroup> element in a table contains column, row, spanning, header and footer specifications, and the body (<tbody>) of the table.

Example
See table on page 130 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((colspec on page 135*(any number)* then (thead on page 137*(optional)* then tbody on page 138)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	table on page 130

Inheritance:

- topic/tgroup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
cols	Indicates the number of columns in a <tgroup> in a table.	NMTOKEN	#REQUIRED	Yes
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
align	Describes the alignment of text in a table column. Allowable values are: **left** Indicates left alignment of the text. **right** Indicates right alignment of the text. **center** Indicates center alignment of the text.	(left | right | center | justify | char | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	justify Justifies the contents to both the left and the right. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

colspec

The <colspec> element contains a column specification for a table, including assigning a column name and number, cell content alignment, and column width.

Example
See table on page 130 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	tgroup on page 133

Inheritance:

- topic/colspec

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
colnum	Indicates the number of a column in the table, counting from the first logical column to the last column.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
colname	Specifies the table column name in which an entry is found.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
colwidth	Describes the column width.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
align	Describes the alignment of text in a table column. Allowable values are: **left** Indicates left alignment of the text. **right** Indicates right alignment of the text. **center** Indicates center alignment of the text. **justify** Justifies the contents to both the left and the right. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(left | right | center | justify | char | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
char	alignment character Default source for entry elements starting in this column. If character alignment is specified, the value is the single alignment character source for any implied char values for entry immediately in this column. A value of "" (the null string) means there is no aligning character.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
charoff	horizontal offset of alignment character when align=char Default source for entry elements starting in this column. For character alignment on an entry in the column, horizontal character offset is the percent of the current column width to the left of the (left edge of the) alignment character.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

	This value should be number, greater than 0 and less than or equal to 100.			
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

thead

The table header (<thead>) element precedes the table body (<tbody>) element in a complex table.

Example
See table on page 130 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((row on page 139*(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept,	tgroup on page 133

reference, glossary	

Inheritance:

- topic/thead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are: **top** Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell). **bottom** Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell). **middle** Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell). **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(top | bottom | middle | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

tbody

The <tbody> element contains the rows in a table.

Example
See table on page 130 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map,	(row on page 139*)(one or more)*

bookmap	

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	tgroup on page 133

Inheritance:

- topic/tbody

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are: **top** Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell). **bottom** Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell). **middle** Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell). **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(top | bottom | middle | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

row

The <row> element contains a single row in a table <tgroup>.

Example

See table on page 130 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((entry on page 141*(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	thead on page 137 , tbody on page 138

Inheritance:

- topic/row

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are: **top** Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell). **bottom** Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell). **middle** Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell). **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(top | bottom | middle | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at	parameter	*PE not*	Not

%id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	%univ-atts; on page 502	entity	*applicable*	applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

entry

The <entry> element defines a single cell in a table.

Example
See table on page 130 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or ph on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or ph on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	row on page 139

Inheritance:

- topic/entry

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
colname	Specifies the table column name in which an entry is found.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
namest	Specifies the first logical column that is included in a horizontal span.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
nameend	Specifies the last logical column that is included in a horizontal span.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
morerows	Specifies the number of additional rows to add in a vertical span.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
align	Describes the alignment of text in a table column. Allowable values are: **left** Indicates left alignment of the text. **right** Indicates right alignment of the text. **center** Indicates center alignment of the text. **justify** Justifies the contents to both the left and the right. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(left | right | center | justify | char | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
char	alignment character Default source for entry elements starting in this column. If character alignment is specified, the value is the single alignment character source for any implied char values for entry immediately in this column. A value of "" (the null string) means there is no aligning character.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
charoff	horizontal offset of alignment character when align=char Default source for entry elements starting in this column. For character alignment on an entry in the column,	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

	horizontal character offset is the percent of the current column width to the left of the (left edge of the) alignment character. This value should be number, greater than 0 and less than or equal to 100.			
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are: **top** Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell). **bottom** Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell). **middle** Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell). **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(top | bottom | middle | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

simpletable

The <simpletable> element is used for tables that are regular in structure and do not need a caption. Choose the simple table element when you want to show information in regular rows and columns. For example, multi-column tabular data such as phone directory listings or parts lists are good candidates for simpletable. Another good use of simpletable is for information that seems to beg for a "three-part definition list"—just use the keycol attribute to indicate which column represents the "key" or term-like column of your structure.

This close match of simpletable to tabular, regular data makes simpletable suitable as the basis for specialized structures such as properties on page 34 (for programming information) and choice tables on page 58 (for tasks).

Example
Source:

```
<simpletable>
 <sthead>
  <stentry>Type style</stentry>
  <stentry>Elements used</stentry>
 </sthead>
 <strow>
  <stentry>Bold</stentry>
  <stentry>b</stentry>
 </strow>
 <strow>
  <stentry>Italic</stentry>
  <stentry>i</stentry>
 </strow>
 <strow>
  <stentry>Underlined</stentry>
  <stentry>u</stentry>
 </strow>
</simpletable>
```

Formatted output:

Type style	Elements used
Bold	b
Italic	i
Underlined	u

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((sthead on page 146*(optional)* then (strow on page 147*(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

ditabase	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , draft-comment on page 193abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , draft-comment on page 193abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , pd on page 265
task	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , draft-comment on page 193abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , draft-comment on page 193abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , draft-comment on page 193abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , draft-comment on page 193

Inheritance:

- topic/simpletable

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

relcolwidth	A relative value to specify the width of a column in relationship to the width of the other columns. The values are totaled and made a percent. For example:
	`relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*"`
	causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%.
	`relcolwidth="90* 150*"`
	causes width of 37.5% and 62.5%.
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

keycol	Defines the column that will be used for row headings. No value indicates no key column. When present, the numerical value causes the specified column to be highlighted as a vertical header.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
refcols	Designates columns that contain references, and are candidates for automated linking. Columns are identified by a space-delimited list of numbers (for example: `1 3`).	NMTOKENS	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.			
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at %display-atts; on page 496	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

sthead

The simpletable header (<sthead>) element contains the table's header row. The header row is optional in a simple table.

Example
See simpletable on page 144 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(stentry on page 148*)(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	simpletable on page 144

Inheritance:

- topic/sthead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default	Required?

			Value	
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

strow

The <simpletable> row (<strow>) element specifies a row in a simple table.

Example
See simpletable on page 144 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(stentry on page 148 *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	simpletable on page 144

Inheritance:

- topic/strow

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at	parameter	*PE not*	Not

	%global-atts; on page 497	entity	*applicable*	applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

stentry

The simpletable entry (<stentry>) element represents a single table cell, like <entry> in <table>. You can place any number of stentry cells in either an <sthead> element (for headings) or <strow> element (for rows of data).

Example
See simpletable on page 144 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or ph on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or ph on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	sthead on page 146 , strow on page 147

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Prolog elements

The prolog elements represent the metadata associated with a document. Most of the metadata in a topic prolog can also be authored in a DITA map, in the map's <topicmeta> element.

The primary types of information that you can store in the prolog include:

- author
- copyright information
- critical tracking dates
- permissions for use/management of the content
- Key words and index terms related to the topic
- extensive metadata about the content of the document
- a resourceid that allows a topic to be associated with external resources such as linking to programming components as contextual help

prolog

The <prolog> element contains information about the topic as an whole (for example, author information or subject category) that is either entered by the author or machine-maintained. Much of the metadata inside the <prolog> will not be displayed with the topic on output, but may be used by processes that generate search indexes or customize navigation.

```
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <audience type="user" job="using" experiencelevel="novice"/>
  </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((author on page 153 *(any number)* then (source on page 178 *(optional)* then (publisher on page 173) *(optional)* then (copyright on page 158 *(any number)* then (critdates on page 162 *(optional)* then (permissions on page 168 *(optional)* then (metadata on page 165 *(any number)* then (resourceid on page 174 *(any number)* then (data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27 , task on page 43 , reference on page 30
topic	topic on page 10
task	topic on page 10 , task on page 43
concept	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27
reference	topic on page 10 , reference on page 30
glossary	topic on page 10 , concept on page 27

Inheritance:

- topic/prolog

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

audience

The <audience> metadata element indicates, through the value of its type attribute, the intended audience for a topic. Since a topic can have multiple audiences, you can include multiple audience elements. For each audience you specify, you can identify the high-level task (*job*) they are trying to accomplish and the level of experience (*experiencelevel*) expected. The audience element may be used to provide a more detailed definition of values used throughout the map or topic on the audience attribute.

Example

For a command reference topic for experienced programmers, the following might be an appropriate indication of that audience:

```
<audience type="programmer" job="programming" experiencelevel="expert"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	metadata on page 165
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351, bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/audience

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Indicates the kind of person for whom the content of the topic is intended. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements. Allowable values are: **user** A user of the product **purchaser** A product purchaser **administrator** A product administrator **programmer** A programmer **executive** An executive **services** Someone who provides services related to the product **other** Use the value specified by the othertype attribute **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(user | purchaser | administrator | programmer | executive | services | other | -dita-use-conref	#IMPLIED	No
othertype	Indicates an alternate audience type, when the type is not available in the type attribute value list. This value is used as the user-provided audience when the type attribute value is set to "other."	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
job	Indicates the high-level task the audience for the topic is trying to accomplish. Different audiences may read the same topic in terms of different high-level tasks; for example, an administrator may read the topic while administering, while a programmer may read the same topic while customizing. Allowable values are: installing, customizing, administering, programming, using, maintaining, troubleshooting, evaluating, planning, migrating, other, #N700007 on page 50.	installing | customizing | administering | programming | using | maintaining | troubleshooting | evaluating | planning | migrating | other | -dita-use-conref	#IMPLIED	No
otherjob	If the job attribute value is "other" the value of this attribute is used to identify a kind of job	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	other than the default ones provided by the job attribute.			
experiencelevel	Indicates the level of experience the audience is assumed to possess. Different audiences may have different experience levels with respect to the same topic; for example, a topic may require general knowledge from a programmer, but expert knowledge from a user. Allowable values are: **novice** A first time user. **general** The most common user. **expert** An experienced user. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(novice | general | expert | -dita-use-conref	#IMPLIED	No
name	Used to associate the audience element with values used in the audience attribute	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-at	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

author

The <author> metadata element contains the name of the topic's author.

Example

```
<prolog>
<author type="creator">Jane Roe</author>
<author type="contributor">John Doe</author>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog on page 150
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/author

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

type	Indicates the primary author of the content. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements. Allowable values are: **creator** The primary or original author of the content. **contributor** An additional author who is not primary. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(creator | contributor | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%localization-atts;)				
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

brand

The <brand> element indicates the manufacturer or brand associated with the product described by the parent <prodinfo> element.

Example

```
<prodinfo>
<prodname>...</prodname>
<vrmlist>
<brand>eServer</brand>
<series>iSeries</series>
<opsys>Linux</opsys>
</vrmlist>
</prodinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo on page 170

Inheritance:

- topic/brand

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%localization-atts;)				
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

category

The <category> element can represent any category by which a topic might be classified for retrieval or navigation; for example, the categories could be used to group topics in a generated navigation bar. Topics can belong to multiple categories.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <metadata>
  <category>Things that are blue</category>
 </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	metadata on page 165
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351, bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/category

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%localization-atts;)				
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

component

The <component> element describes the component of the product that this topic is concerned with. For example, a product might be made up of many components, each of which is installable separately. Components might also be shared by several products so that the same component is available for installation with many products. An implementation may (but need not) use this identification to check cross-component dependencies when some components are installed, but not others. An implementation may also (but need not) use the identification make sure that topics are hidden, removed, or flagged in some way when the component they describe isn't installed.

Example

```
<prodinfo>
 <prodname>BatCom</prodname>
 <vrmlist>
  <vrm version="v5r2"/>
 </vrmlist>
 <component>TCP/IP</component>
</prodinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo on page 170

Inheritance:

- topic/component

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

copyright

The <copyright> element is used for a single copyright entry. It includes the copyright years and the copyright holder. Multiple <copyright> statements are allowed.

Example

```
<prolog>
<copyright>
<copyryear year="2001-04-12"></copyryear>
<copyrholder>IBM</copyrholder>
</copyright>
<copyright type=secondary>
<copyryear year="2002-03-03></copyryear>
<copyrholder>Schweetones Publishing, Inc.</copyrholder>
</copyright>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((copyryear on page 160 *(one or more)* then copyrholder on page 159)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog on page 150
map, bookmap	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/copyright

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Indicates the legal status of the copyright holder. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements. Allowable values are: **primary** The copyright holder with first claim on the copyright **secondary** An additional copyright holder who is not primary **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(primary | secondary | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

copyrholder

The copyright holder (<copyrholder>) element names the entity that holds legal rights to the material contained in the topic.

Example

```
<copyright>
<copyryear year=2001></copyryear>
<copyrholder>IBM</copyrholder>
</copyright>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	copyright on page 158

Inheritance:

- topic/copyrholder

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

copyryear

The <copyryear> element contains the copyright year as specified by the *year* attribute.

Example

```
<copyright>
<copyryear year="2001"></copyryear>
<copyrholder>IBM</copyrholder>
</copyright>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	copyright on page 158

Inheritance:

- topic/copyryear

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
year	The year in YYYY format.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

created

The <created> element specifies the document creation date using the *date* attribute.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <critdates>
  <created date="2001-06-12"></created>
  <revised golive="2001-08-20"></revised>
 </critdates>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	critdates on page 162

Inheritance:

- topic/created

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
date	The document creation date. Enter the date as YYYY-MM-DD where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31. See A Summary of the International Standard Date and Time Notation for background.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	Yes
golive	The publication or general availability (GA) date, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
expiry	The date when the information should be retired or refreshed, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

critdates

The <critdates> element contains the critical dates in a document life cycle, such as the creation date and multiple revision dates.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <critdates>
  <created date="2001-06-12"></created>
  <revised golive="2001-08-20"></revised>
 </critdates>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(created on page 161 then (revised on page 175 *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog on page 150
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351, bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/critdates

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

featnum

The <featnum> element contains the feature number of a product in the metadata.

Example

```
<prodinfo>
 <prodname>BatCom</prodname>
 <vrmlist>
  <vrm version="v5r2"/>
 </vrmlist>
 <featnum>135</featnum>
 <component>TCP/IP</component>
</prodinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo on page 170

Inheritance:

- topic/featnum

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

keywords

The <keywords> element contains a list of key words (using <indexterm> or <keyword> markup) that can be used by a search engine.

When DITA topics are output to XHTML, any <keyword> or <indexterm> elements in the <keywords> element are placed in the Web page metadata. The index terms in this context are also included in any generated index.

Example

The following example is metadata from an installation task:

```
<prolog>
 <keywords>
  <keyword>installing</keyword>
  <keyword>uninstalling</keyword>
  <keyword>prerequisites</keyword>
  <keyword>helps</keyword>
  <keyword>wizards</keyword>
 </keywords>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(indexterm on page 199 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(indexterm on page 199 or keyword on page 83) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	metadata on page 165
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351, bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/keywords

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

metadata

The <metadata> section of the prolog contains information about a topic such as audience and product information. Metadata can be used by computational processes to select particular topics or to prepare search indexes or to customize navigation. Elements

inside of <metadata> provide information about the content and subject of a topic; prolog elements outside of <metadata> provide lifecycle information for the content unit (such as the author or copyright), which are unrelated to the subject.

metadata elements provide keywords/categories/metadata about the content/subject - stuff outside provides lifecycle info for the content unit, regardless of its subject (like who authored, etc.)

Example

```
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <audience type="user" job="using" experiencelevel="novice"/>
  </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((audience on page 151) *(any number)* then (category on page 156) *(any number)* then (keywords on page 164) *(any number)* then (prodinfo on page 170) *(any number)* then (othermeta on page 167) *(any number)* then (data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prolog on page 150

Inheritance:

- topic/metadata

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
mapkeyref	Identifies the map, if any, from which the contained links are derived. This value is automatically generated by the same process that creates the links from the map, as a way to identify which map the links came from. If the <linklist> or <linkpool> is manually created by the author, there is no need to use this attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

othermeta

The <othermeta> element can be used to identify properties not otherwise included in <metadata> and assign name/content values to those properties. The name attribute identifies the property and the content attribute specifies the property's value. The values in this attribute are output as HTML metadata elements, and have no defined meaning for other possible outputs such as PDF.

Example

```
<othermeta name="ThreadWidthSystem" content="metric"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	metadata on page 165
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/othermeta

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	The name of the metadata property.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
content	The value for the property named in the name attribute.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
translate-content	Indicates whether the content attribute of	yes | no |	#IMPLIED	No

	the defined metadata property should be translated or not.	-dita-use-con on page 509		
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

permissions

The <permissions> prolog element can indicate any preferred controls for access to a topic. Topics can be filtered based on the permissions element. This capability depends on your output formatting process.

Example

```
<prolog>
<permissions view="entitled"/>
...
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog on page 150
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/permissions

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

view	Defines the classifications of viewers allowed to view the document. Allowable values are: **internal** For internal use only. **classified** For a certain group, only. **all** The world. **entitled** Special folks, only. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(internal | classified | all | entitled | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

platform

The <platform> metadata element contains a description of the operating system and/or hardware related to the product being described by the <prodinfo> element. The platform element may be used to provide a more detailed definition of values used throughout the map or topic on the platform attribute.

Example
See prodinfo on page 170 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase,	prodinfo on page 170

topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	

Inheritance:

- topic/platform

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

prodinfo

The <prodinfo> metadata element in the prolog contains information about the product or products that are the subject matter of the current topic. The prodinfo element may be used to provide a more detailed definition of values used throughout the map or topic on the product attribute.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <metadata>
  <prodinfo>
   <prodname>Transcription Assistant</prodname>
    <vrmlist><vrm version="1" release="3" modification="1"/></vrmlist>
   <platform>Linux</platform>
  </prodinfo>
 </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((prodname on page 171) then (vrmlist on page 179) then (brand on page 155 or series on page 177 or platform on page 169 or prognum on page 172 or featnum on page 163 or component on page 157) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	metadata on page 165
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351, bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/prodinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

prodname

The <prodname> metadata element contains the name of the product that is supported by the information in this topic.

Example
See prodinfo on page 170

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference,	prodinfo on page 170

glossary	

Inheritance:

- topic/prodname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

prognum

The <prognum> metadata element identifies the program number of the associated program product. This is typically an order number or a product tracking code that could be replaced by an order number when a product completes development.

Example
See prodinfo on page 170 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo on page 170

Inheritance:

- topic/prognum

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

publisher

The <publisher> metadata element contains the name of the person, company, or organization responsible for making the content or subject of the topic available.

Example

```
<publisher>AJ Printing Inc.</publisher>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog on page 150
map, bookmap	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/publisher

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

resourceid

The <resourceid> element provides an identifier for applications that require them in a particular format, when the normal id attribute of the topic can't be used. Each resourceid entry should be unique. It is one of the metadata elements that can be included within the prolog of a topic, along with document tracking and product information, etc. The element has no content, but takes an *id* attribute and an *appname* attribute.

Example

```
<resourceid id="sqlid00375" appname="dbaccess"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog on page 150
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/resourceid

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	The value used by a specific application to identify the topic.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. See The conref attribute on page 508 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
appname	Contains the name of the application that will use the resource id to identify the topic.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

revised

The <revised> element in the prolog is used to maintain tracking dates that are important in a topic development cycle, such as the last modification date, the original availability date, and the expiration date.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <critdates>
  <created date="1/1/1999" golive="2/15/1999" expiry="9/9/9999"/>
  <revised modified="3/3/2003" golive="2/3/2002" expiry="9/9/9999"/>
 </critdates>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	critdates on page 162

Inheritance:

- topic/revised

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
modified	The last modification date, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
golive	The publication or general availability (GA) date, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
expiry	The date when the information should be retired or refreshed, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other			

	common DITA attributes on page 508			

series

The <series> metadata element contains information about the product series that the topic supports.

Example

```
<prodinfo>
 <prodname>BatCom</prodname>
 <vrmlist><vrm version="5"/></vrmlist>
 <series>tSeries</series>
 <prognum>5412-SS1</prognum>
 <featnum>135</featnum>
 <component>TCP/IP</component>
</prodinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo on page 170

Inheritance:

- topic/series

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other			

	common DITA attributes on page 508			

source

The <source> element contains a reference to a resource from which the present topic is derived, either completely or in part. The element can contain a description of the resource; the *href* reference can be a string or a URL that points to it.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <source href="http://www.ibm.com">Somewhere, someplace</source>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog on page 150
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351, bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

- topic/source

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A pointer to the external resource from which the present resource is derived. The href attribute identifies the destination of the resource using conventional URL syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

vrmlist

The <vrmlist> element contains a set of <vrm> elements for logging the version, release, and modification information for multiple products or versions of products to which the topic applies.

Example

The recent versions of a mythical product might be logged thus using the vrmlist markup:

```
<prolog>
 <metadata>
  <prodinfo>
   <prodname>Widge-o-matic</prodname>
   <vrmlist>
     <vrm version="1.0" release="2001-03-30" modification="0"/>
     <vrm version="1.0" modification="1" release="2001-10-03"/>
   </vrmlist>
  </prodinfo>
 </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(vrm on page 180*(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo on page 170

Inheritance:

- topic/vrmlist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

vrm

The vrm empty element contains information about a single product's version, modification, and release, to which the current topic applies.

Example
See vrmlist on page 179 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	vrmlist on page 179

Inheritance:

- topic/vrm

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
version	Indicates the released version number of the product(s) that the document	CDATA	#IMPLIED	Yes

	describes.			
release	Contains the product release identifier.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
modification	Indicates when the product described in this topic was last modified.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Related links elements

The related-links section of DITA topics is a special structure that supports the navigational rules from a topic to its related neighbor topics.

Links are different from cross-references in that cross-references occur only within the body of a topic and can target any element in this or other topics; links only represent topic-to-topic connections, or connections to non-DITA-topic resources. Links are located after the body of a topic, in the related-links on page 24 element.

Related links can also be managed indirectly using DITA maps, which provide a more efficient way to manage links as an aspect of the collection of topics rather than as embedded pointers in each topic.

link

The <link> element defines a relationship to another topic. Links represent the types and roles of topics in a web of information, and therefore represent navigational links within that web. Links are typically sorted on output based on their attributes. The optional container elements for link (<linkpool> and <linklist>) allow authors to define groups with common attributes, or to preserve the authored sequence of links on output. Links placed in a <linkpool> may be rearranged for display purposes (combined with other local or map-based links); links in a <linklist> should be displayed in the order they are defined. Refer to those elements for additional explanation.

Example

```
<related-links>
<linkpool type="concept">
<link href="czover.htm#sqljsupp"/>
<link href="czesqlj.htm#sqljemb/>
</linkpool>
<related-links>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((linktext on page 190 *(optional)* then (desc on page 109) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	related-links on page 24 , linklist on page 184, linkpool on page 187

Inheritance:

- topic/link

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

query	This attribute is deprecated. It may be removed in the future.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
role	The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time. See The role attribute on page 512 for information on supported values.	(parent | child | sibling | friend | next | previous | cousin | ancestor | descendant | *sample* | *external* | *[deprecated]* other | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
otherrole	Indicates an alternate role. This value is used when the role attribute is set to other.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	details on supported values.			
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

linklist

The <linklist> element defines an author-arranged group of links. Within <linklist>, the organization of links on final output is in the same order as originally authored in the DITA topic.

There are two ways to organize related information links: add them all in no particular order, using the <linkpool> or <related-links> elements, and let the output formatting processor sort them; or pre-group them using one or more <linklist> elements. When you pre-group them using <linklist>, then the order of the links as you created them is preserved during the output formatting process.

Attributes set on <linklist> are inherited by its descendants. For example, if you've got a <linklist> that contains all external links, you can set *scope="external"* on that outer<linklist> element and leave it off the contained links.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task,	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (desc on page 109) *(optional)* then (linklist on page 184 or link on page 182) *(any number)* then (linkinfo on page 191 *(optional)*)

reference, concept, glossary	

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	related-links on page 24 , linklist on page 184

Inheritance:

- topic/linklist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
collection-type	Collection types describe how links relate to each other. A family collection represents a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other. Sequence indicates that the order of the child topics is significant; output processors will typically link between them in order. Unordered indicates that the order is not significant. Choice indicates that one of the children should be selected. If no value is specified, processors should treat the default as "unordered", although no default is specified in the DTD. See this topic on page 509 for more information on the conre value. Usage of the collection-type attribute on <reltable> and <relcolspec> is currently undefined, and reserved for future use.	(unordered | sequence | choice | family | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
duplicates	Specifies whether or not duplicate links will be filtered out of a linklist. Allowable values are: "yes" (allow duplicate links), or "no" (filter out duplicate links). In general, duplicate links in linklists are preserved.. Note that links are regarded as duplicates only if their content plus all attributes match.	#IMPLIED	The attribute value is currently ignored, but should default to yes for links in linklists and no for all other links.	No

mapkeyref	Identifies the map, if any, from which the contained links are derived. This value is automatically generated by the same process that creates the links from the map, as a way to identify which map the links came from. If the <linklist> or <linkpool> is manually created by the author, there is no need to use this attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
role	The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time. See The role attribute on page 512 for information on supported values.	(parent | child | sibling | friend | next | previous | cousin | ancestor | descendant | *sample* | *external* | *[deprecated]* other | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
otherrole	Indicates an alternate role. This value is used when the role attribute is set to other.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

linkpool

The <linkpool> element defines a group of links that have common characteristics, such as type or audience or source. When links are not in a <linklist> (that is, they are in <related-links> or <linkpool> elements), the organization of links on final output is determined by the output process, not by the order that the links actually occur in the DITA topic.

There are two ways to organize related information links: add them all in no particular order, using the <linkpool> or <related-links> elements, and let the output formatting processor sort them; or pre-group them using one or more <linklist> elements. When you pre-group them using <linklist>, then the order of the links as you created them is preserved during the output formatting process.

Attributes set on <linkpool> are inherited by its descendants. For example, if you've got a <linkpool> that contains all external links, you can set *scope="external"* on that outer<linkpool> element and leave it off the links it contains.

Example

```
<related-links>
<linkpool type="task">
<link href="generalfaq.html#installing" role="parent"/>
<link href="register.html#newuser" role="sibling"/>
</linkpool>
</related-links>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(linkpool on page 187 or link on page 182) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	related-links on page 24 , linkpool on page 187

Inheritance:

- topic/linkpool

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
collection-type	Collection types describe how links relate to each other. A family collection represents a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other. Sequence indicates that the order of the child topics is significant; output processors will typically link between them in order. Unordered indicates that the order is not significant. Choice indicates that one of the children should be selected. If no value is specified, processors should treat the default as "unordered", although no default is specified in the DTD. See this topic on page 509 for more information on the conre value. Usage of the collection-type attribute on <reltable> and <relcolspec> is currently undefined, and reserved for future use.	(unordered | sequence | choice | family | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
duplicates	Specifies whether or not duplicate links will be filtered out of a linklist. Allowable values are: "yes" (allow duplicate links), or "no" (filter out duplicate links). In general, duplicate links in linklists are preserved.. Note that links are regarded as duplicates only if their content plus all attributes match.	#IMPLIED	The attribute value is currently ignored, but should default to yes for links in linklists and no for all other links.	No
mapkeyref	Identifies the map, if any, from which the contained links are derived. This value is automatically generated by the same process that creates the links from the map, as a way to identify which map the links came from. If the <linklist> or	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	linkpool> is manually created by the author, there is no need to use this attribute.			
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
role	The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time. See The role attribute on page 512 for information on supported values.	(parent | child | sibling | friend | next | previous | cousin | ancestor | descendant | *sample* | *external* | *[deprecated]* other | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
otherrole	Indicates an alternate role. This value is used when the role attribute is set to other.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at	parameter	*PE not*	Not

%id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	%univ-atts; on page 502	entity	*applicable*	applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

linktext

The <linktext> element provides the literal label or line of text for a link. In most cases, the text of a link can be resolved during processing by cross reference with the target resource. Use the <linktext> element only when the target cannot be reached, such as when it is a peer or external link, or the target is local but not in DITA format. When used inside a topic, it will be used as the text for the specified link; when used within a map, it will be used as the text for generated links that point to the specified topic.

Example

```
<link href="tzover.htm#accsqlj">
 <linktext>Accessing relational data with SQLJ</linktext>
</link>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	link on page 182
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351, bookmeta on page 394
map	topicmeta on page 351

Inheritance:

"- topic/linktext " when used in topics, and "- map/linktext " when used in maps.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

linkinfo

The <linkinfo> element allows you to place a descriptive paragraph following a list of links in a <linklist> element.

Example

```
<linklist collection-type="sequence">
  <title>Repairing widgets</title>
  <link href="debug.dita" type="task"></link>
  <link href="repair.dita" type="task"></link>
  <link href="test.dita" type="task"></link>
  <linkinfo>To repair a reciprocating widget,
you must follow the instructions very carefully. Note
the sequence to follow. Do it.</linkinfo>
</linklist>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	linklist on page 184

Inheritance:

- topic/linkinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Miscellaneous elements

Most DITA elements represent discourse, or information that is placed exactly as entered. However, there are also types of information that are usually authored in context with a thought or issue, but upon output, the content might be relocated, suppressed, or used only for purposes such as inline annotations for drafts. These elements include footnotes, index entries, draft comments, and special cleanup containers that can hold migrated data that still needs a writer's intervention to get into the right place.

dita

The <dita> element provides a top-level container for multiple topics when you create documents using the ditabase document type. The <dita> element lets you create any sequence of concept, task, and reference topics, and the ditabase document type lets you further nest these topic types inside each other. The <dita> element has no particular output implications; it simply allows you to create multiple topics of different types at the same level in a single document.

Inheritance
Not a specializable DITA element.

Example

```
<dita>
  <concept id="batintro">...</concept>
  <reference id="batparts">...</reference>
  <task id="batfeeding">...</task>
  <task id="battraining">...</task>
  <task id="batcleanup">...</task>
</dita>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase	(topic on page 10 or concept on page 27 or task on page 43 or reference on page 30 or glossentry on page 73) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

draft-comment

The <draft-comment> element allows simple review and discussion of topic contents

within the marked-up content. Use the <draft-comment> element to ask a question or make a comment that you would like others to review. To indicate the source of the draft comment or the status of the comment, use the author, time or disposition attributes.

Processing systems should provide a run-time flag or parameter to cause the content of this element to be specially displayed for draft output only. By default, it is stripped out to prevent publishing internal comments by mistake.

Example

```
<draft-comment author="EBP">Where's the usage information for this
section?</draft-comment>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , organizationname on page 476
map	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141
ditabase	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265
topic	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry

	on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252ṗd on page 265
task	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252ṗd on page 265
concept	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252ṗd on page 265
reference	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , screen on page 326ç̣odeblock on page 252ṗd on page 265
glossary	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326ç̣odeblock on page 252ṗd on page 265

Inheritance:

- topic/draft-comment

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
author	Designates the originator of the draft comment.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
time	Describes when the draft comment was created.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
disposition	Status of the draft comment. Values can be issue, open, accepted, rejected, deferred, duplicate, reopened, unassigned, or completed.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not. Setting to "yes" will override the default. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing default for the translate value; because this element uses an actual default, it will always be treated as translate="no" unless overridden as described.	yes | no | -dita-use-con on page 509	"no"	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

	element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).			
dir	Specifies the directionality of text: left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	(ltr | rtl | lro | rlo | -dita-use-con on page 509)	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

fn

Use footnote (<fn>) to annotate text with notes that are not appropriate for inclusion in line or to indicate the source for facts or other material used in the text.

Footnote content is always skipped at the place where it was entered, and reproduced elsewhere, according to these rules:

- A footnote with no given *id* attribute is a **single-use** footnote. Upon output, it generates a number as a superscript “callout” that is linked to the placement of the footnote, usually at the bottom of the immediate printed page or at the end of the Web article. Subsequent footnotes in the same topic will have the next number in sequence for their callouts. If you enter a particular character in the *callout* attribute for the footnote, that character will be used as the superscript “callout” that is linked to the placement of the footnote.
- A footnote entered with an *id* attribute is a **use-by-reference** footnote. Upon output, it does not appear anywhere unless it has been referenced using an <xref> with the *type* attribute set to “fn” . The same callout behaviors will apply.
- Ordinarily, a footnote in one topic can't be referenced in another topic. The previous behaviors are local to each topic. But by using the <conref> mechanism, you can instance another topic's footnote into the local topic where it will then follow those behaviors:
  - If you use `<fn conref="thatid"></fn>` all by itself, the result will be the same as the single-use footnote entered literally in the same location.
  - If you use `<fn conref="thatid" id="thisid"></fn>`, then `<xref href="thisid" type="fn"/>`, the result will be the same as the use-by-reference model described before.

Example

The first example uses a simple fn element, with no ID and no callout attribute. In that case, markup such as the following:

```
The memory storage capacity of the computer is
```

```
2 GB<fn>A GB (gigabyte) is equal to
1000 million bytes</fn> with error correcting support.
```

may produce output similar to the following:

> The memory storage capacity of the computer is 2 GB1 with error correcting support.
>
> . . . . . .
>
> 1 A GB (gigabyte) is equal to 1000 million bytes
>
> ----- [bottom of page] ----------

The second example uses a callout attribute. It is marked up as follows:

```
The memory storage capacity of the computer is
2 GB<fn callout="#">A GB (gigabyte) is equal to
1000 million bytes</fn> with error correcting support.
```

That DITA markup may produce output similar to the following:

> The memory storage capacity of the computer is 2 GB# with error correcting support.
>
> . . . . . .
>
> # A GB (gigabyte) is equal to 1000 million bytes
>
> ----- [bottom of page] ----------

The third example uses an ID on a footnote, and then references that ID multiple times. The DITA markup looks like this:

```
I like pets. <fn id="reuse-fn">This is the name of an animal.</fn>
At my house, I have a dog<xref href="#topic/reuse-fn"/>, a
cat<xref href="#topic/reuse-fn"/>, and a llama<xref
href="topic/reuse-fn"/>.
```

and may produce output similar to the following:

> I like pets. At my house, I have a dog1, a cat1, and a llama1.
>
> . . . . . .
>
> 1This is the name of an animal.
>
> ----- [bottom of page] ----------

Note: Footnote support may vary between different output types, depending on conventions and capabilities. For example, PDF output may lack support for the *callout* attribute, or footnotes may be collected as endnotes for certain types of Web publications.

Contains

Doctype	Content model

ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , organizationname on page 476
map	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141
ditabase	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265
topic	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265
task	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265
concept	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265
reference	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225

	, dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252pd on page 265
glossary	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326codeblock on page 252pd on page 265

Inheritance:

- topic/fn

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
callout	Specifies what character is used for the footnote link, for example a number or an alpha character. The attribute may also specify a short string of characters. When no callout value is specified, footnotes are numbered.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

indexterm

An <indexterm> element allows the author to indicate that a certain word or phrase should produce an index entry in the generated index.

The content of an <indexterm> element is used to produce an index entry in the generated index. You can nest indexterm elements to create multi-level indexes. The content is not output as part of topic content, only as part of the index.

An <indexterm> element (with no start or end attribute specified) is interpreted as a point reference that will contribute the number of the current page to an index entry whose contents is the content of the indexterm. All indexterms with the same content are "merged" to form a single index entry in the resulting index, and all contributed page numbers are included in that index entry.

In the case of nested indexterms, the indexterms with no indexterm children (i.e., the "leaves") each contribute a page number to the generated index; the ancestral indexterm elements for each leaf indexterm provide the higher levels for the multilevel entry for which the leaf indexterm is the lowest level.

An indexterm that occurs in a topic prolog is interpreted as a point reference to the start

of the title of the topic.

It is an error if an indexterm containing no indexterm children contains both an index-see and an index-see-also. (Note: index-see and index-see-also elements within indexterms that do contain indexterm children are ignored.) In the case of this error condition, an implementation may (but need not) give an error message, and may (but need not) recover by treating all such index-see elements as index-see-also elements.

The start and end attribute on indexterm can be used in cases where one wishes to index an extended discussion that may continue over a number of pages. The start of a range is indicated by an indexterm with a start attribute. The end of a range is indicated with an indexterm with an end attribute whose value matches that of the start attribute on the start of range indexterm. Such markup would contribute to the generated index a page range covering all pages in the index range.

The end of range indexterm should have no content of its own; any content it has is ignored. There is no reason for the end of range indexterm to have any indexterm ancestors; however, an implementation should be able to handle an end of range indexterm nested within one or more indexterms.

The start and end attributes are defined as CDATA, though it is recommended that the values should not contain any whitespace characters (e.g., space, tab) or control characters. Matching of start and end attributes is done as a character by character comparison with all characters significant and no case folding occurring. The start and end attributes are ignored unless they occur on an indexterm element that has no child indexterm elements (i.e., a leaf indexterm).

Index range indications may occur in the topicmeta of a topicref at the map level, in the prolog of a topic, or in the body of a topic, and are interpreted as follows:

- In a map, the start range points to the start of the topic title of the topic being referenced by its containing topicref. The end range points to the end of the final child contained by the topic being referenced by its containing topicref, or to the end of the final topic referenced by the current map (whichever comes first). When a start and end range occur in the same topicmeta, the range applies to the containing topicref and its children.
- In a prolog, the start range points to the start of the containing topic's title. The range ends with a matching index range end in the same prolog, or the end of the prolog, whichever comes first. The range applies to the containing topic and all its children including child relationships defined in a map.
- In a body, the range starts where the start indexterm occurs and ends at the matching index range end indication within the same body, or at the end of the body, whichever comes first. Such an index range does not span sub-topics of the topic.

When index ranges with the same identifier overlap, the widest range applies, and end ranges are matched with start ranges by last-in-first-out. In other words, the ranges are interpreted as nested rather than overlapping with the highest-level container taking precedence over narrower contained ranges.

As defined above, there is no such thing as an index range start that isn't terminated by either a matching end or some maximum scope. There can, however, be unmatched index range end indications; these should be ignored.

Example

```
<p>An indexterm element allows the author to indicate that
a certain word or phrase should produce an index entry in the
generated index. You can nest indexterm elements to create
multi-level indexes.<indexterm>indexterm</indexterm>
<indexterm>Valid in Many Places elements<indexterm>indexterm</indexterm>
```

```
</indexterm></p>
```

Markup such as

```
<indexterm>cheese
  <indexterm>sheeps milk
    <indexterm>pecorino</indexterm>
  </indexterm>
  <indexterm>goats milk
    <indexterm>chevre</indexterm>
  </indexterm>
</indexterm>
```

would be equivalent to

```
<indexterm>cheese
  <indexterm>sheeps milk
    <indexterm>pecorino</indexterm>
  </indexterm>
</indexterm>
<indexterm>cheese
  <indexterm>goats milk
    <indexterm>chevre</indexterm>
  </indexterm>
</indexterm>
```

and would be part of the input that might generate resulting index entries such as

- cheese
  - goats milk
    - chevre 14
  - sheeps milk
    - pecorino 14

Markup such as

```
<indexterm>cheese
  <indexterm>sheeps milk
    <indexterm start="level-3-pecorino">pecorino</indexterm>
  </indexterm>
</indexterm>
. . .
<indexterm end="level-3-pecorino"/>
```

(where the ellipses represent several pages worth of input) might generate an index entry such as

- cheese
  - sheeps milk
    - pecorino 18-24

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or indexterm on page 199 or index-base on page 204 or index-see on page 337 or index-see-also on page 338 or index-sort-as on page 340)*(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or indexterm on page 199 or index-base on page 204 or index-see on page 337 or index-see-also on page 338 or index-sort-as on page 340)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

bookmap	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , entry on page 141 , keywords on page 164 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , organizationname on page 476
map	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , entry on page 141 , keywords on page 164 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338
ditabase	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , entry on page 141 , keywords on page 164 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338
topic	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , entry on page 141 , keywords on page 164 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338
task	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , entry on page 141 , keywords on page 164 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338
concept	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , entry on page 141 , keywords on page 164 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338
reference	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , entry on page 141 , keywords on page 164 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338
glossary	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , entry on page 141 , keywords on page 164 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338

Inheritance:

- topic/indexterm

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
start	Specifies that an index entry is positioned at the beginning of a range. See the description of <indexterm> for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
end	Specifies that an index entry is positioned at the end of a range; value matches the start attribute on another indexterm. See the description of <indexterm> for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

indextermref

This element is not completely defined, and is reserved for future use.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , organizationname on page 476
map	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141
ditabase	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc

	on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265
topic	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265
task	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265
concept	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265
reference	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265
glossary	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , codeblock on page 252 , pd on page 265

Inheritance:

- topic/indextermref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

index-base

The <index-base> element allows indexing extensions to be added by specializing off this element. It does not in itself have any meaning and should be ignored in processing.

The <index-base> element can only exist as a child of an <indexterm> element. This characteristic makes it the appropriate element to specialize to add indexing extensions. Specifically, the index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , and index-sort-as on

page 340 elements only make sense as children of <indexterm> and so are specializations of <index-base>. Those elements are all part of the indexing domain on page 337 , which is new for DITA 1.1.

On its own, <index-base> has no meaning. Processors should ignore this element and its content if encountered in its unspecialized form.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or indexterm on page 199) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or indexterm on page 199) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	indexterm on page 199

Inheritance:

- topic/index-base

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

tm

The trademark (<tm>) element in DITA is used to markup and identify a term or phrase that is trademarked. Trademarks include registered trademarks, service marks, slogans and logos.

The business rules for indicating and displaying trademarks may differ from company to company and may be enforced by authoring policy and by specific processing.

Example

```
<p>The advantages of using <tm trademark="DB2 Universal Database"
tmtype="tm">
<tm trademark="DB2" tmtype="reg" tmclass="ibm">DB2</tm> Universal
Database</tm> are
well known.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(text data or tm on page 205) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , keyword on page 83 , term on page 231ph on page 80 , tm on page 205 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , booklibrary on page 368mainbooktitle on page 384booktitlealt on page 372organizationname on page 476
map	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , keyword on page 83 , term on page 231ph on page 80 , tm on page 205 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141
ditabase	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , keyword on page 83 , term on page 231ph on page 80 , tm on page 205 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , b on page 238u on page 242i on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247pt on page 264 , pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
topic	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , keyword on page 83 , term on page 231ph on page 80 , tm on page 205 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on

	page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , b on page 238u on page 242 , i on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
task	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , keyword on page 83 , term on page 231ph on page 80 , tm on page 205 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247pt on page 264pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
concept	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , keyword on page 83 , term on page 231ph on page 80 , tm on page 205 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , b on page 238u on page 242 , i on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
reference	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , keyword on page 83 , term on page 231ph on page 80 , tm on page 205 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
glossary	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , keyword on page 83 , term on page 231ph on page 80 , tm on page 205 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

- topic/tm

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
trademark	The trademarked term	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
tmowner	The trademark owner, for example "OASIS"	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
tmtype	The trademark type: trademark, registered trademark, or service mark	CDATA	(tm | reg | service |	Yes

			-dita-use-con	
tmclass	Classification of the trademark. This may used to differentiate different groupings of trademarks.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

data-about

The <data-about> element identifies the subject of a property when the subject isn't associated with the context in which the property is specified. The property itself is expressed by the <data> element. The <data-about> element handles exception cases where a property must be expressed somewhere other than inside the actual subject of the property. The <data-about> element is particularly useful as a basis for specialization in combination with the <data> element.

> Important: Do not use the <data-about> element to identify the object of a property. The href attribute of the <data> element serves that purpose.

Example

The full properties of a cited book can be maintained conveniently in the prolog:

```
<topic id="questions">
    <title>Questions and answers</title>
    <prolog>
        <data-about name="book" href="urn:isbn:0156983508">
            <data name="title">The World Doesn't End</data>
            <data name="author">
                <data name="firstname">Charles</data>
                <data name="lastname">Simic</data>
            </data>
            <data name="published" datatype="year">1989</data>
            ...
        </data-about>
        ...
    </prolog>
    <body>
        ...
       <lq href="urn:isbn:0156983508">In a forest of question marks ...
       </lq>
       ...
    </body>
</topic>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((data on page 212) then (data on page 212 or data-about on page 208) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data-about on page 208 , data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , map on page 342topicref on page 353relcell on page 349topicmeta on page 351linktext on page 190 , searchtitle on page 15 , person on page 429 , organization on page 427summary on page 440printlocation on page 430bookpartno on page 408 , booknumber on page 404topichead on page 357topicgroup on page 356index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340organizationname on page 476otherinfo on page 477addressdetails on page 450locality on page 468localityname on page 469administrativearea on page 451thoroughfare on page 484emailaddress on page 456url on page 485
map	data-about on page 208 , data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , map on page 342topicref on page 353relcell on page 349topicmeta on page 351linktext on page 190 , searchtitle on page 15 , topichead on page 357 , topicgroup on page 356index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
ditabase	data-about on page 208 , data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242i on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337indexterm on page 338indexsortas on page 340
topic	data-about on page 208 , data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on

	page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292 , sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
task	data-about on page 208 , data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292 , sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
concept	data-about on page 208 , data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279 , repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data-about on page 208 , data on page 212title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page

	150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319 screen on page 326 b on page 238 u on page 242 i on page 240 tt on page 243 sup on page 245 sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 codeblock on page 252 var on page 287 oper on page 290 delim on page 292 sep on page 295 pt on page 264 pd on page 265 fragref on page 279 repsep on page 297 msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 filepath on page 312 userinput on page 314 systemoutput on page 316 coords on page 333 index-see on page 337 index-see-also on page 338 index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data-about on page 208 , data on page 212 title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 screen on page 326 b on page 238 , u on page 242 i on page 240 tt on page 243 sup on page 245 sub on page 247 codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 var on page 287 oper on page 290 delim on page 292 sep on page 295 pt on page 264 pd on page 265 fragref on page 279 repsep on page 297 msgph on page 301 msgblock on page 303 filepath on page 312 userinput on page 314 systemoutput on page 316 coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 index-see-also on page 338 index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

- topic/data-about

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	details on supported values.			
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

data

The <data> element represents a property within a DITA topic or map. While the <data> element can be used directly to capture properties, it is particularly useful as a basis for specialization. Default processing treats the property values as an unknown kind of metadata, but custom processing can match the name attribute or specialized element to format properties as sidebars or other adornments or to harvest properties for automated processing.

The subject of the property is ordinarily the container of the <data> element. In the content model for the <prolog> and <metadata> elements, the property applies to the topic as a whole. In the <topicmeta> element, the property applies to the referenced topic. You can use the <data-about> element to identify the subject of the property with an explicit reference.

The name attribute names the property for processes. You can use a <title> subelement to provide a label for the property. You can use the datatype attribute to identify the type for the value. The value of the property can be any of the following:

- A simple text value expressed with the value attribute or textual content.
- A reference to either DITA content or a non-DITA resource expressed with the href attribute.
- An image or other non-textual object.
- A brief unit of descriptive text that isn't part of the body text flow.
- A complex structure composed with nested <data> elements.

CAUTION: The <data> element should only be used for properties and not to embed text for formatting as part of the flow of the topic body.

Example

The structure identifies the library and version demonstrated by a code sample:

```
<codeblock><data name="exampleOf">
                  <data name="library" href="ajaxLibrary.js"/>
                  <data name="version" value="2006-6-19"/>
               </data>
                  ...
      </codeblock>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or i on page 242 or tt on page 240 or dt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or title on page 12) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or ph on page 80 or title on page 12) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data-about on page 208 , data-about on page 208 , data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , thd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , map on page 342 , topicref on page 353 , relcell on page 349 , topicmeta on page 351 , linktext on page 190 , searchtitle on page 15 , bookmeta on page 394 , publisherinformation on page 434 , person on page 429 , organization on page 427 , summary on page 440 , printlocation on page 430 , published on page 432 , reviewed on page 437 , edited on page 419 , tested on page 441 , approved on page 395 , bookevent on page 399 , bookpartno on page 408 , booknumber on page 404 , maintainer on page 424 , topichead on page 357 , topicgroup on page 356 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340 , organizationname on page 476 , otherinfo on page 477 , addressdetails on page 450 , locality on page 468 , localityname on page 469

	, administrativearea on page 451thoroughfare on page 484emailaddress on page 456url on page 485
map	data-about on page 208 , data-about on page 208 , data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , map on page 342topicref on page 353relcell on page 349topicmeta on page 351linktext on page 190 , searchtitle on page 15 , topichead on page 357topicgroup on page 356index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
ditabase	data-about on page 208 , data-about on page 208 , data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295 , pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data-about on page 208 , data-about on page 208 , data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279 , repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
task	data-about on page 208 , data-about on page 208 , data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page

	199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , on page 238 , on page 242 , on page 240 , on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
concept	data-about on page 208 , data-about on page 208 , data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , thd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , on page 238 , on page 242 , on page 240 , on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data-about on page 208 , data-about on page 208 , data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , thd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , on page 238 , on page 242 , on page 240 , on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data-about on page 208 , data-about on page 208 , data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , thd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on

	page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

- topic/data

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the	No

	and processing implications.		target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

foreign

The <foreign> element is an open extension that allows information architects to incorporate existing standard vocabularies for non-textual content. like MathML and SVG, as inline objects. If <foreign> contains more than one alternative content element, they will all be processed. Specialization of <foreign> should be implemented as a domain, but for those looking for more control over the content can implement foreign vocabulary as an element specialization.

SVG Example within a <p> element

```
<p>... as in the formula
  <svg>
    <svg:svg width="100%" height="100%" version="1.1"
xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg">

<ellipse cx="300" cy="150" rx="200" ry="80"
style="fill:rgb(200,100,50);
stroke:rgb(0,0,100);stroke-width:2"/>

    </svg:svg>
  </svg>.
```

```
</p>
```

MathML Example within an <object> element

```
<p>... as in the formula
<object>
  <desc>4 + x</desc>
  <mathML>
    <mml:math display="block">
      <mml:mrow>
        <mml:mo>&sum;</mml:mo>
        <mml:mn>4</mml:mn>
        <mml:mo>+</mml:mo>
        <mml:mi>x</mml:mi>
      </mml:mrow>
    </mml:math>
  </mathML>
 <object>.
</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , topicmeta on page 351 , linktext on page 190 , searchtitle on page 15 , person on page 429 , organization on page 427 , summary on page 440 , printlocation on page 430 , bookpartno on page 408 , booknumber on page 404 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340 , organizationname on page 476 , otherinfo on page 477 , addressdetails on page 450 , locality on page 468 , localityname on page 469 , administrativearea on page 451 , thoroughfare on page 484 , emailaddress on page 456 , url on page 485
map	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , topicmeta on page 351 , linktext on page 190 , searchtitle on page 15 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340

ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340

concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , on page 238 , on page 242 , on page 240 on page 243 on page 245 on page 247 on page 254 on page 252 on page 287 on page 290 on page 292 , sep on page 295 on page 264 on page 265 on page 279 on page 297 on page 301 on page 303 on page 312 on page 314 on page 316 , coords on page 333 on page 337 on page 338 on page 340
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319 on page 326 , on page 238 , u on page 242 , on page 240 on page 243 on page 245 on page 247 on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 on page 287 on page 290 on page 292 on page 295 on page 264 on page 265 on page 279 on page 297 on page 301 on page 303 on page 312 on page 314 on page 316 on page 333 , index-see on page 337 on page 338 on page 340
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 on page 326 , on page 238 , on page 242 , on page 240 on page 243 on page 245 on page 247 on page 254 on page 252 var on page 287 on page 290 on page 292 on page 295 on page 264 on page 265 , fragref on page 279 on page 297 on page 301 on page 303 on page 312 , userinput on page 314 on page 316 on page 333 on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 on page 340

Inheritance:

- topic/foreign

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

unknown

The <unknown> element is an open extension that allows information architects to incorporate xml fragments that do not necessarily fit into an existing DITA use case. The base processing for <unknown> is to suppress unless otherwise instructed.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , topicmeta on page 351 , linktext on page 190 , searchtitle on page 15 , person on page 429 , organization on page 427 , summary on page 440 , printlocation on page 430 , bookpartno on page 408 , booknumber on page 404 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340 , organizationname on page 476 , otherinfo on page 477 , addressdetails on page 450 , locality on page 468 , localityname on page 469 , administrativearea on page 451 , thoroughfare on page 484 , emailaddress on page 456 , url on page 485
map	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204

	, cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , topicmeta on page 351linktext on page 190 , searchtitle on page 15 , index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337indexsee-also on page 338indexsort-as on page 340
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on

	page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333, index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292 , sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refbody on page 31 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , object on page 114 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prolog on page 150 , metadata on page 165 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252 var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

- topic/unknown

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Specialization elements

Several DITA elements exist either for architectural reasons or for support of specialized markup yet to be designed. Although there is little need to use these elements unless you are directed to, some of them, such as <state>, can be used if your content makes use of these semantic distinctions. A discussion of signals on a gate of an integrated logic circuit, for example, might use the state element to represent either on or off conditions of that gate.

itemgroup

The <itemgroup> element is reserved for use in specializations of DITA. As a container element, it can be used to sub-divide or organize elements that occur inside a list item, definition, or parameter definition.

Example

```
<li>Second point of a list.
 <itemgroup>related discourse</itemgroup>
</li>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	li on page 94 , dd on page 105 , choice on page 67 , pd on page 265
topic	li on page 94 , dd on page 105 , pd on page 265

task	li on page 94 , dd on page 105 , choice on page 67 , pd on page 265
concept	li on page 94 , dd on page 105 , pd on page 265
reference	li on page 94 , dd on page 105 , pd on page 265
map, bookmap	li on page 94 , dd on page 105

Inheritance:

- topic/itemgroup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

no-topic-nesting

The <no-topic-nesting> element is a placeholder in the DITA architecture. It is not actually used by the default DITA document types; it is for use only when creating a validly customized document type where the information designer wants to eliminate the ability to nest topics. Not intended for use by authors, and has no associated output processing.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, glossary	glossentry on page 73

Inheritance:

- topic/no-topic-nesting

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

required-cleanup

A <required-cleanup> element is used as a placeholder for migrated elements that cannot be appropriately tagged without manual intervention. As the element name implies, the intent for authors is to clean up the contained material and eventually get rid of the <required-cleanup> element. Authors should not insert this element into documents.

Note: Because the content of <required-cleanup> is not considered to be verified data, **DITA processors are required to strip this element from output by default.** A runtime flag *may* be provided to allow a draft view of migrated content in context.

Example

Presuming an original HTML document had contained some content within a tag (for which there is no clear migrational equivalent in DITA), the following might be the result that is valid within an XML editor, but which requires an author to decide how to better tag or revise this original content:

```
<section>
  <title>Some section title</title>
  <required-cleanup remap="center">Some original content migrated
  from a &lt;center> tag.</required-cleanup>
</section>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , organizationname on page 476
map	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 ,

	entry on page 141
ditabase	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326codeblock on page 252pd on page 265
topic	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , screen on page 326codeblock on page 252pd on page 265
task	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326codeblock on page 252pd on page 265
concept	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , screen on page 326codeblock on page 252pd on page 265
reference	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , screen on page 326codeblock on page 252pd on page 265
glossary	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326codeblock on page 252pd on page 265

Inheritance:

- topic/required-cleanup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
remap	Indicates the element that the contents of the required-cleanup element were mapped from (provides an idea about what the new intent should be).	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not. Setting to "yes" will override the default. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing	yes | no | -dita-use-con on page 509	"no"	No

	default for the translate value; because this element uses an actual default, it will always be treated as translate="no" unless overridden as described.			
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
dir	Specifies the directionality of text: left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	(ltr | rtl | lro | rlo | -dita-use-con on page 509)	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

state

The <state> element specifies a name/value pair whenever it is necessary to represent a named state that has a variable value. The element is primarily intended for use in specializations to represent specific states (like logic circuit states, chemical reaction states, airplane instrumentation states, and so forth).

Example

```
<step><cmd>Verify the presence of  an "on" or high condition at the input
gate
(ie,  <state name="inflag" value="high"/>)</cmd></step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map,	no content

bookmap	

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , booklibrary on page 368mainbooktitle on page 384booktitlealt on page 372organizationname on page 476
map	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141
ditabase	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252 pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
topic	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
task	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
concept	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 ,

	sup on page 245ṣub on page 247c̣odeph on page 254c̣odeblock on page 252p̣t on page 264p̣d on page 265f̣ragref on page 279ṣynnote on page 283
reference	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326ḅ on page 238u̇ on page 242i̇on page 240t̤t on page 243ṣup on page 245ṣub on page 247c̣odeph on page 254c̣odeblock on page 252p̣t on page 264p̣d on page 265f̣ragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
glossary	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326ḅ on page 238 , u on page 242i̇on page 240t̤t on page 243ṣup on page 245ṣub on page 247c̣odeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252p̣t on page 264p̣d on page 265f̣ragref on page 279ṣynnote on page 283

Inheritance:

- topic/state

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	The name of the property whose state is being described.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
value	The state of the property identified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

term

The <term> element identifies words that may have or require extended definitions or explanations. In future development of DITA, for example, terms might provide associative linking to matching glossary entries.

Example

```
<p>The <term>reference implementation</term> of DITA represents the
standard,
<q>fallback</q> behaviors intended for DITA elements.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(text data or tm on page 205) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , linktext on page 190 , searchtitle on page 15 , person on page 429 , organization on page 427 , summary on page 440 , printlocation on page 430 , bookpartno on page 408 , booknumber on page 404 , booklibrary on page 368 , mainbooktitle on page 384 , booktitlealt on page 372 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340 , organizationname on page 476 , otherinfo on page 477 , addressdetails on page 450 , locality on page 468 , localityname on page 469 , administrativearea on page 451 , thoroughfare on page 484 , emailaddress on page 456 , url on page 485
map	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , linktext on page 190 , searchtitle on page 15 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 ,

	codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on

	page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252 var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279synnote on page 283repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

- topic/term

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

boolean

The <boolean> element is used to express one of two opposite values, such as yes or no, on or off, true or false, high or low, and so forth. The element itself is empty; the value of the element is stored in its *state* attribute, and the semantic associated with the value is typically in a specialized name derived from this element.

OASIS TC Note: This element is deprecated. It is functionally equivalent to <state

value="yes|no"/>, which is recommended as its replacement in all cases.

Example

```
She said "<boolean state="yes"/>" when I asked her to marry me!
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , booklibrary on page 368mainbooktitle on page 384booktitlealt on page 372organizationname on page 476
map	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141
ditabase	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252 pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
topic	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
task	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101

	, ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
concept	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243 , sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
reference	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
glossary	title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

- topic/boolean

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
state	The state of the boolean element. Allowable values are: yes no	(yes | no | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Typographic elements

The typographic elements are used to highlight text with styles (such as bold, italic, and monospace). Never use these elements when a semantically specific element is available. These elements are not intended for use by specializers, and are intended solely for use by authors when no semantically appropriate element is available and a formatting effect is required.

b

The bold (<b>) element is used to apply bold highlighting to the content of the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper element. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the <uicontrol> element. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
<p><b>STOP!</b> This is <b>very</b> important!</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 b on page 238 , u on page 242 i on page 240 tt on page 243 sup on page 245 sub on page 247 codeph on page 254 codeblock on page 252 pt on page 264 pd on page 265 fragref on page 279 synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326 b on page 238 ,

	u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264 , pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242i,on page 240tt on page 243sup on page 245 , sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/b

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

i

The italic (<i>) element is used to apply italic highlighting to the content of the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper element. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the <uicontrol> element. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
<p>Unplug the unit <i>before</i> placing the metal screwdriver
against the terminal screw.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note

	on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242i,on page 240 , tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242i,on page 240 , tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242i,on page 240 , tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264 , pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242i,on page 240 , tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/i

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

u

The underline (<u>) element is used to apply underline highlighting to the content of the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper element. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the <uicontrol> element. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
Beware: <u>overuse</u> <i>of</i> <b>highlighting</b> is
sometimes known as font-itis!
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 ,

	section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243sup on page 245sub on page 247codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/u

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

tt

The teletype (<tt>) element is used to apply monospaced highlighting to the content of

the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper element. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the <uicontrol> element. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
<p>Make sure that the screen displays <tt>File successfully created</tt>
before
proceeding to the next stage of the task.</p>
```

(Tag purists may delight to point out that this example could be more correctly marked with the msgph on page 301 element.)

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on

	page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/tt

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

sup

The superscript (<sup>) element indicates that text should be superscripted, or vertically raised in relationship to the surrounding text. Superscripts are usually a smaller font than

the surrounding text. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper tag. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
The power produced by the electrohydraulic dam was 10<sup>10</sup> more
than
the older electric plant.  The difference was H<sub>2</sub>O.
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326 , b on page

	238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/sup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

sub

A subscript (<sub>) indicates that text should be subscripted, or placed lower in relationship to the surrounding text. Subscripted text is often a smaller font than the surrounding text. Formatting may vary depending on your output process. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
The power produced by the electrohydraulic dam was 10<sup>10</sup> more
than
the older electric plant.  The difference was H<sub>2</sub>O.
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or dl on page 205 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph

	on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252pt on page 264pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/sub

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Programming elements

The programming domains elements are used to define the syntax and to give examples of programming languages.

apiname

The <apiname> element provides the name of an application programming interface (API) such as a Java class name or method name. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>Use the <apiname>document.write</apiname> method to create text
output in the dynamically constructed view.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre

	on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319, screen on page 326, b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254, codeblock on page 252, var on page 287, oper on page 290, delim on page 292, sep on page 295, pt on page 264, pd on page 265, fragref on page 279, synnote on page 283, repsep on page 297, msgph on page 301, msgblock on page 303, filepath on page 312, userinput on page 314, systemoutput on page 316, coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337, index-see-also on page 338, index-sort-as on page 340
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319, screen on page 326, b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254, codeblock on page 252, var on page 287, oper on page 290, delim on page 292, sep on page 295, pt on page 264, pd on page 265, fragref on page 279, synnote on page 283, repsep on page 297, msgph on page 301, msgblock on page 303, filepath on page 312, userinput on page 314, systemoutput on page 316, coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337, index-see-also on page 338, index-sort-as on page 340
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319, screen on page 326, b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254, codeblock on page 252, var on page 287, oper on page 290, delim on page 292, sep on page 295, pt on page 264, pd on page 265, fragref on page 279, synnote on page 283, repsep on page 297, msgph on page 301, msgblock on page 303, filepath on page 312, userinput on page 314, systemoutput on page 316, coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337, index-see-also on page 338, index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on

	page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287 , oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254codeblock on page 252var on page 287oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword pr-d/apiname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

codeblock

The <codeblock> element represents lines of program code. Like the <pre> element, content of this element has preserved line endings and is output in a monospaced font. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<codeblock>
/* a long sample program */
Do forever
```

```
  Say "Hello, World"
End
</codeblock>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
glossary	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265

Inheritance:

+ topic/pre pr-d/codeblock

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at %display-atts; on page 496	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, xml:space	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

codeph

The code phrase (<codeph>) element represents a snippet of code within the main flow of text. The code phrase is displayed in a monospaced font for emphasis. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>The second line of the sample program code, <codeph>Do
forever</codeph>,
represents the start of a loop construct.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326ḅ on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266ṗt on page 264ṗd on page 265 , fragref on page 279ṡynnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326ḅ on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266ṗt on page 264ṗd on page 265fṛagref on page 279ṡynnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326ḅ on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266ṗt on page 264ṗd on page 265fṛagref on page 279ṡynnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326ḅ on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266ṗt on page 264ṗd on page 265fṛagref on page 279ṡynnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326ḅ on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266ṗt on page 264ṗd on page 265fṛagref on page 279ṡynnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre

	on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/codeph

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

option

The <option> element describes an option that can be used to modify a command (or something else, like a configuration). This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
something <option>/modifier</option>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite

	on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319, screen on page 326, b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287, synph on page 266, oper on page 290, delim on page 292, sep on page 295, pt on page 264, pd on page 265, fragref on page 279, synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297, msgph on page 301, msgblock on page 303, filepath on page 312, userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316, coords on page 333, index-see on page 337, index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319, screen on page 326, b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287, synph on page 266, oper on page 290, delim on page 292, sep on page 295 , pt on page 264, pd on page 265, fragref on page 279, synnote on page 283, repsep on page 297, msgph on page 301, msgblock on page 303, filepath on page 312, userinput on page 314, systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333, index-see on page 337, index-see-also on page 338, index-sort-as on page 340
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319, screen on page 326, b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287, synph on page 266, oper on page 290, delim on page 292, sep on page 295 , pt on page 264, pd on page 265, fragref on page 279, synnote on page 283, repsep on page 297, msgph on page 301, msgblock on page 303, filepath on page 312, userinput on page 314, systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333, index-see on page 337, index-see-also on page 338, index-sort-as on page 340
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite

	on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , synph on page 266 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , synph on page 266 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , synph on page 266 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword pr-d/option

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at	parameter	*PE not*	Not

%id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	%univ-atts; on page 502	entity	*applicable*	applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

parmname

When referencing the name of an application programming interface parameter within the text flow of your topic, use the parameter name (<parmname>) element to markup the parameter. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
Use the <parmname>/env</parmname> parameter of the
<cmdname>config</cmdname>
command to update the field value.
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , synph on page 266 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 ,

	index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319 screen on page 326 b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 synph on page 266 oper on page 290 delim on page 292 sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 pd on page 265 fragref on page 279 synnote on page 283 repsep on page 297 msgph on page 301 msgblock on page 303 filepath on page 312 userinput on page 314 systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 index-see on page 337 index-see-also on page 338 index-sort-as on page 340
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319 screen on page 326 b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 synph on page 266 oper on page 290 delim on page 292 sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 pd on page 265 fragref on page 279 synnote on page 283 repsep on page 297 msgph on page 301 msgblock on page 303 filepath on page 312 userinput on page 314 systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 index-see on page 337 index-see-also on page 338 index-sort-as on page 340
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319 screen on page 326 b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 synph on page 266 oper on page 290 delim on page 292 sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 pd on page 265 fragref on page 279 synnote on page 283 repsep on page 297 msgph on page 301 msgblock on page 303 filepath on page 312 userinput on page 314 systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 index-see on page 337 index-see-also on page 338 index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite

	on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287synph on page 266oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279synnote on page 283repsep on page 297msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287synph on page 266oper on page 290delim on page 292sep on page 295pt on page 264pd on page 265fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283repsep on page 297msgph on page 301msgblock on page 303filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword pr-d/parmname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

parml

The parameter list (<parml>) element contains a list of terms and definitions that describes the parameters in an application programming interface. This is a special kind of definition list that is designed for documenting programming parameters. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example
Example source:

```
This code example is a basic method signature:
<codeblock>returnType methodName(pList1, pList2) {</codeblock>
where
<parml>
 <plentry>
  <pt>pList1</pt>
  <pd>is the first variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
 </plentry>
 <plentry>
  <pt>pList2</pt>
  <pd>is the second variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
 </plentry>
</parml>
```

Example output:

This code example is a basic method signature:

```
returnType methodName(pList1, pList2) {
```

where

pList1

is the first variable declaration passed to methodName

pList2

is the second variable declaration passed to methodName

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(plentry on page 264)*one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 ,

	chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
glossary	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265

Inheritance:

+ topic/dl pr-d/parml

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are: **yes** Indicates compact spacing. **no** Indicates expanded spacing. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-conr	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

plentry

The parameter list entry element (<plentry>) contains one or more parameter terms and definitions (pd and pt). This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example
See parml on page 261 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((pt on page 264 *(one or more)* then (pd on page 265 *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	parml on page 261

Inheritance:

+ topic/dlentry pr-d/plentry

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

pt

A parameter term, within a parameter list entry, is enclosed by the <pt> element. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example
See parml on page 261 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or m on page 205 or image on page 110 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	plentry on page 264

Inheritance:

+ topic/dt pr-d/pt

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

pd

A parameter definition, within a parameter list entry, is enclosed by the <pd> element. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example
See parml on page 261 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or p on page 77 or lq on page 125 or note on page 78 or dl on page 98 or parml on page 261 or ul on page 92 or ol on page 90 or sl on page 95 or pre on page 119 or codeblock on page 252 or msgblock on page 303 or screen on page 326 or lines on page 121 or fig on page 106 or syntaxdiagram on page 268 or imagemap on page 330 or image on page 110 or object on page 114 or table on page 130 or simpletable on page 144 or itemgroup on page 225 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	plentry on page 264

Inheritance:

+ topic/dd pr-d/pd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

synph

The syntax phrase (<synph>) element is a container for syntax definition elements. It is used when a complete syntax diagram is not needed, but some of the syntax elements, such as kwd, oper, delim, are used within the text flow of the topic content. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

```
<synph><kwd>format</kwd> <var>volumename</var></synph>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or codeph on page 254 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or var on page 287 or kwd on page 285 or oper on page 290 or delim on page 292 or sep on page 295 or synph on page 266) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 ,

	dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , synph on page 266 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/synph

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

syntaxdiagram

The syntax diagram (<syntaxdiagram>) element is the main container for all the syntax elements that make up a syntax definition. The syntax diagram represents the syntax of a statement from a computer language, or a command, function call or programming language statement. Traditionally, the syntax diagram is formatted with “railroad tracks” that connect the units of the syntax together, but this presentation may differ depending on the output media. The syntax diagram element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram>
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice> <var>input-filename</var> <kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice> <var>output-filename</var>
<kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (groupseq on page 270 or groupchoice on page 272 or groupcomp on page 275 or dragref on page 279 or dragment on page 278 or synblk on page 282 or synnote on page 283 or synoteref on page 284)*(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , pd on page 265
task	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , pd on page 265
glossary	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265

Inheritance:

+ topic/fig pr-d/syntaxdiagram

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at %display-atts; on page 496	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

groupseq

The <groupseq> element is part of the subset of elements that define syntax diagrams in DITA. A group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. Within the syntax definition, groups of keywords, delimiters and other syntax units act as a combined unit, and they occur in a specific sequence, as delimited by the <groupseq> element. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (repsep on page 297 *(optional)* then (groupseq on page 270 or groupchoice on page 272 or groupcomp on page 275 or fragref on page 279 or kwd on page 285 or var on page 287 or delim on page 292 or oper on page 290 or sep on page 295 or synnote on page 283 or synnoteref on page 284) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept,	syntaxdiagram on page 268 , synblk on page 282 groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275 , fragment on page 278

reference, glossary	

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup pr-d/groupseq

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

groupchoice

The <groupchoice> element is part of the subset of elements that define syntax diagrams in DITA. A group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. A group choice specifies that the user must make a choice about which part of the syntax to use. Groups are often nested. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (repsep on page 297 *(optional)* then (groupseq on page 270 or groupchoice on page 272 or groupcomp on page 275 or fragref on page 279 or kwd on page 285 or var on page 287 or delim on page 292 or oper on page 290 or sep on page 295 or synnote on page 283 or synnoteref on page 284 *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram on page 268 , synblk on page 282 groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275 , fragment on page 278

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup pr-d/groupchoice

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.			
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.			
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

groupcomp

The <groupcomp> element is part of the subset of elements that define syntax diagrams in DITA. A group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. The group composite means that the items that make up the syntax diagram will be formatted close together rather than being separated by a horizontal or vertical line, which is the usual formatting method. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept,	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (repsep on page 297 *(optional)* then (groupseq on page 270 or groupchoice on page 272 or groupcomp on page 275 or fragref on page 279 or kwd on page 285 or var on page 287 or delim on page 292 or oper on page 290 or sep on page 295 or synnote on page 283 or synnoteref on page 284 *(any number)*)

glossary	

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram on page 268 , synblk on page 282groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275 , fragment on page 278

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup pr-d/groupcomp

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

fragment

Within a syntax definition, a <fragment> is a labeled subpart of the syntax. The <fragment> element allows breaking out logical chunks of a large syntax diagram into named fragments. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="none">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <fragment>
  <groupchoice><kwd>*OVERLAP</kwd><kwd>*Prompt</kwd></groupchoice>
 </fragment>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (groupseq on page 270 or groupchoice on page 272 or groupcomp on page 275 or fragref on page 279 or synnote on page 283 or synnoteref on page 284) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram on page 268 , synblk on page 282

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup pr-d/fragment

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%localization-atts;)				
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

fragref

The fragment reference (<fragref>) element provides a logical reference to a syntax definition fragment so that you can reference a syntax fragment multiple times, or pull a large section of syntax out of line for easier reading. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example
This markup example:

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="none">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <fragref href="#syntax/overlay"></fragref>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <fragment id="overlay">
  <title>Overlay</title>
  <groupchoice><kwd>*OVERLAP</kwd><kwd>*Prompt</kwd></groupchoice>
 </fragment>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

produces the following output:

```
CopyFile

>>-COPYF--input-filename*INFILE--output-filename--*OUTFILE------>

>--| Overlay |--+-input-filename-+--+-output-filename-+-------><
                '-*INFILE--------'  '-*OUTFILE--------'

Overlay

|--+-*OVERLAP-+-------------------------------------------------|
   '-*Prompt--'
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase,	syntaxdiagram on page 268 , synblk on page 282 groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 ,

topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	groupcomp on page 275 , fragment on page 278

Inheritance:

+ topic/xref pr-d/fragref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A reference to a syntax diagram fragment element. The referenced fragment should be in the same diagram as the fragref element. The href attribute uses conventional URL syntax to point to the ID of the matching syntax diagram fragment: `href="#topicid/fragmentid"`	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional or required. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See this topic on page 509 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

synblk

The syntax block (<synblk>) element organizes small pieces of a syntax definition into a larger piece. The syntax block element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<synblk>
<groupseq><kwd>this</kwd><sep>-</sep><kwd>is</kwd><sep>-</sep><kwd>a</kwd>
<sep>-</sep><var>test</var></groupseq>
</synblk>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (groupseq on page 270 or groupchoice on page 272 or groupcomp on page 275 or fragref on page 279 or fragment on page 278 or synnote on page 283 or synnoteref on page 284)*(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram on page 268

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup pr-d/synblk

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other			

	common DITA attributes on page 508			

synnote

The syntax note (<synnote>) element contains a note (similar to a footnote) within a syntax definition group or fragment. The syntax note explains aspects of the syntax that cannot be expressed in the markup itself. The note will appear at the bottom of the syntax diagram instead of at the bottom of the page. The syntax block element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<groupcomp><var>one</var><var>two</var><var>three</var></groupcomp>
<synnote>My first syntax note.</synnote>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or tm on page 205) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram on page 268 , synblk on page 282 , groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275 , fragment on page 278

Inheritance:

+ topic/fn pr-d/synnote

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
callout	Specifies what character is used for the footnote link, for example a number or an alpha character. The attribute may also specify a short string of characters. When no callout value is specified, footnotes are numbered.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%localization-atts;)				
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

synnoteref

The syntax note (<synnoteref>) reference element references a syntax note element (<synnote>) that has already been defined elsewhere in the syntax diagram. The same notation can be used in more than one syntax definition. The syntax note reference element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<synnoteref href="#topicid/mysyn"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram on page 268 , synblk on page 282 , groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275 , fragment on page 278

Inheritance:

+ topic/xref pr-d/synnoteref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	Points to the target syntax note (<synnote>), which must be in the same syntax diagram. Use standard DITA href syntax for targetting the element: `href="#topicid/synnoteid"`	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

kwd

The <kwd> element defines a keyword within a syntax diagram. A keyword must be typed or output, either by the user or application, exactly as specified in the syntax definition. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	synph on page 266 , groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword pr-d/kwd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item	optional |	#IMPLIED	No

	in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on the conref value.	required | default | -dita-use-con		
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.			
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

var

Within a syntax diagram, the <var> element defines a variable for which the user must supply content, such as their user name or password. It is represented in output in an italic font. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	synph on page 266 , groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/var

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.			
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

oper

The operator (<oper>) element defines an operator within a syntax definition. Typical operators are equals (=), plus (+) or multiply (*). This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram>
  <title>Adding</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>1</kwd><oper>+</oper><var>two</var>
<delim>=</delim><kwd>something</kwd>
  </groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	synph on page 266 , groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/oper

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	values.			
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

delim

Within a syntax diagram, the delimiter (<delim>) element defines a character marking the beginning or end of a section or part of the complete syntax. Typical delimiter characters are the parenthesis, comma, tab, vertical bar or other special characters. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram>
```

```
 <title>Adding</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>1</kwd><oper>+</oper><var>two</var><delim>=</delim>
 <kwd>something</kwd>
</groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	synph on page 266 , groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/delim

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional or required. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See this topic on page 509 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

sep

The separator (<sep>) element defines a separator character that is inline with the content of a syntax diagram. The separator occurs between keywords, operators or groups in a syntax definition. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram>
 <title>Adding</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>1</kwd><oper>+</oper><sep>(</sep><var>two</var><sep>)</sep>
<delim>=</delim><kwd>something</kwd></groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	synph on page 266 , groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/sep

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.			
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

repsep

The repeat separator (<repsep>) element in a syntax diagram defines a group of syntax elements that can (or should) be repeated. If the <repsep> element contains a separator character, such as a plus (+), this indicates that the character must be used between repetitions of the syntax elements. This element is part of the DITA programming domain,

a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example
In this example, the group may be repeated. When repeated, a comma should be used between selections.

```
<groupchoice>
  <repsep>,</repsep>
  <kwd>This</kwd>
  <kwd>That</kwd>
  <kwd>The other</kwd>
</groupchoice>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	groupseq on page 270 , groupchoice on page 272 , groupcomp on page 275

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/repsep

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional or required. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See this topic on page 509 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.			
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section,	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.			
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Software elements

The software domain elements are used to describe the operation of a software program.

msgph

The message phrase (<msgph>) element contains the text content of a message produced by an application or program. It can also contain the variable name (varname) element to illustrate where variable text content can occur in the message. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>A server log entry of <msgnum>I:0</msgnum> is equivalent to the
text message, <msgph>informational: successful</msgph>.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283

task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph sw-d/msgph

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other			

	common DITA attributes on page 508			

msgblock

The message block (<msgblock>) element contains a multi-line message or set of messages. The message block can contain multiple message numbers and message descriptions, each enclosed in a <msgnum> and <msgph> element. It can also contain the message content directly. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>A sequence of failed password attempts generates the following
characteristic message stream:</p>
<msgblock>
I:0
S:3
I:1
S:3
I:1
S:4
S:99 (lockup)
</msgblock>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on

	page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
glossary	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265

Inheritance:

+ topic/pre sw-d/msgblock

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at %display-atts; on page 496	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, xml:space	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

msgnum

The message number (<msgnum>) element contains the number of a message produced by an application or program. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>A server log entry of <msgnum>I:0</msgnum> is equivalent to the
text message, <msgph>informational: successful</msgph>.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite

	on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on

	page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword sw-d/msgnum

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

cmdname

The command name (<cmdname>) element specifies the name of a command when it is part of a software discussion. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 ,

	publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 ,

	publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword sw-d/cmdname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%localization-atts;)				
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

varname

The variable name (<varname>) element defines a variable that must be supplied to a software application. The variable name element is very similar to the variable (var) element, but variable name is used outside of syntax diagrams. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<filepath>
<varname>install-dir</varname>\projects\working\<varname>project-dir</varname>
      \source\<varname>filename</varname>.java
</filepath>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333 , index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338 ,

	index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite

	on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312userinput on page 314systemoutput on page 316coords on page 333index-see on page 337 , index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword sw-d/varname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

filepath

The <filepath> element indicates the name and optionally the location of a referenced file by specifying the directory containing the file, and other directories that may precede it in the system hierarchy. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>Uncompress the <filepath>gbbrsh.gz</filepath> file to the
<filepath>/usr</filepath> directory. Ensure that the
<filepath>/usr/tools/data.cfg</filepath> path is listed in
the execution path system variable.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283

concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph sw-d/filepath

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

userinput

The user input (<userinput>) element represens the text a user should input in response to a program or system prompt. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>After you type <userinput>mealplan dinner</userinput>, the meal
planning program
will print a <systemoutput>For what day?</systemoutput> message.
Reply by typing the day of the week for which you want a meal plan,
for example, <userinput>Thursday</userinput>.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note

	on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph sw-d/userinput

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

systemoutput

The system output (<systemoutput>) element represents computer output or responses to a command or situation. A generalized element, it represents any kind of output from the computer, so the author may wish to choose more specific markup, such as msgph, for messages from the application. The system output element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>After you type <userinput>mealplan dinner</userinput>, the meal
planning program
will print a <systemoutput>For what day?</systemoutput> message.
Reply by typing the day of the week for which you want a meal plan,
for example, <userinput>Thursday</userinput>.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note

	on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph sw-d/systemoutput

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

User interface elements

The user interface domain elements are used to describe the user interface of a software program.

uicontrol

The user interface control (<uicontrol>) element is used to mark up names of buttons, entry fields, menu items, or other objects that allow the user to control the interface. Use the <uicontrol> element inside a <menucascade> element to identify a sequence of menu choices in a nested menu, such as **File** --> **New** . This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document user interface tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example
Press the **<uicontrol>**OK**</uicontrol>** button.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or image on page 110 or shortcut on page 325)* *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , menucascade on page 323 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , menucascade on page 323 , screen on page 326 , b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note

	on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , menucascade on page 323 , screen on page 326ḅ on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , menucascade on page 323ṣcreen on page 326ḅ on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , menucascade on page 323ṣcreen on page 326ḅ on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , menucascade on page 323ṣcreen on page 326ḅ on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph ui-d/uicontrol

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other			

	common DITA attributes on page 508			

wintitle

The window title <wintitle> element can be used to mark up names of windows or dialogs, or other user interface elements at the same level of grouping, including wizard titles, wizard page titles, and window pane titles. This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document user interface tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<step>
  <cmd>Click <uicontrol>Configure</uicontrol>.</cmd>
  <stepresult>The <wintitle>Configuration Options</wintitle> window
  opens with your last set of selections highlighted.</stepresult>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333, index-see on page 337, index-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre

	on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333indexindex-see on page 337indexindex-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333indexindex-see on page 337indexindex-see-also on page 338indexindex-sort-as on page 340
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333indexindex-see on page 337indexindex-see-also on page 338 , index-sort-as on page 340
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 ,

	publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , alt on page 113 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , indexterm on page 199 , index-base on page 204 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , author on page 153 , source on page 178 , publisher on page 173 , copyrholder on page 159 , category on page 156 , keywords on page 164 , prodname on page 171 , brand on page 155 , series on page 177 , platform on page 169 , prognum on page 172 , featnum on page 163 , component on page 157 , navtitle on page 14 , searchtitle on page 15 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linktext on page 190 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , uicontrol on page 319 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , var on page 287 , oper on page 290 , delim on page 292 , sep on page 295 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283 , repsep on page 297 , msgph on page 301 , msgblock on page 303 , filepath on page 312 , userinput on page 314 , systemoutput on page 316 , coords on page 333index-see on page 337index-see-also on page 338index-sort-as on page 340

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword ui-d/wintitle

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

menucascade

The <menucascade> element is used to document a series of menu choices. The <menucascade> element contains one or more user interface control (<uicontrol>) elements, for example: `Start > Programs > Accessories > Notepad`. If there is more than one <uicontrol> element, the formatter shows connecting characters between the menu items to represent the menu cascade. This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document user interface

tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example
This example:

```
<menucascade>
 <uicontrol>Start</uicontrol>
 <uicontrol>Programs</uicontrol>
 <uicontrol>Accessories</uicontrol>
 <uicontrol>Notepad</uicontrol>
</menucascade>
```

produces this output: **Start** --> **Programs** --> **Accessories** --> **Notepad**

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(uicontrol on page 319) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
topic	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
task	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , cmd on page 52 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page

	65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
concept	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
reference	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , proptype on page 39 , propvalue on page 40 , propdesc on page 41 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283
glossary	data on page 212 , title on page 12 , shortdesc on page 19 , desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , q on page 127 , sli on page 97 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dthd on page 101 , ddhd on page 102 , dt on page 104 , dd on page 105 , figgroup on page 108 , pre on page 119 , lines on page 121 , ph on page 80 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , cite on page 123 , xref on page 86 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , glossterm on page 75 , glossdef on page 74 , screen on page 326b on page 238 , u on page 242 , i on page 240 , tt on page 243 , sup on page 245 , sub on page 247 , codeph on page 254 , codeblock on page 252 , pt on page 264 , pd on page 265 , fragref on page 279 , synnote on page 283

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph ui-d/menucascade

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

shortcut

The <shortcut> element identifies a keyboard shortcut for a menu or window action. This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements

designed to document user interface tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example
This example:

```
<menucascade>
 <uicontrol>Start</uicontrol>
 <uicontrol><shortcut>P</shortcut>rograms</uicontrol>
</menucascade>
```

produces the following reusult: **Start** --> **Programs**

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	uicontrol on page 319

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword ui-d/shortcut

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

screen

The <screen> element contains or refers to a textual representation of a computer screen or user interface panel (window).

Use <screen> to contain representations of text-based online panels, text consoles

("term" or "curses" windows, for example), or other text-based user interface components. The default print representation is to enclose the screen within a box, suggesting a computer display screen. In contrast to graphical screen captures normally used to represent GUI parts (see the image on page 110 element description), this element specifically supports constructions for which text is the primary content.

This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example
This example demonstrates using the <screen> element to represent a DOS edit session, where this code:

```
<p>Type "edit" after the command line prompt and press Enter.  The
following
editing interface will be displayed.</p>
<screen>
   File  Edit  Search  View  Options  Help
+--------------------------------- UNTITLED1
-----------------------------------+
¦
¦
¦
¦
¦
¦
¦  Line:1    Col:1  F1=Help
¦
+-------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
</screen>
```

produces this output:

Type "edit" after the command line prompt and press Enter. The following editing interface will be displayed.

```
   File  Edit  Search  View  Options  Help
+--------------------------------- UNTITLED1
-----------------------------------+
¦
¦
¦
¦
¦
¦
¦  Line:1    Col:1  F1=Help
¦
+-------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph on page 80 or codeph on page 254 or synph on page 266 or filepath on page 312 or msgph on page 301 or userinput on page 314 or systemoutput on page 316 or b on page 238 or u on page 242 or i on page 240 or tt on page 243 or sup on page 245 or sub on page 247 or uicontrol on page 319 or menucascade on page 323 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , pd on page 265
task	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265
reference	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , propdesc on page 41 , pd on page 265
glossary	desc on page 109 , p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , fig on page 106 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , linkinfo on page 191 , conbody on page 28 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265

Inheritance:

+ topic/pre ui-d/screen

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale,	A set of related attributes, described at	parameter	*PE not*	Not

frame, expanse)	%display-atts; on page 496	entity	*applicable*	applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, xml:space	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Utilities elements

The utilities domain elements represent common features of a language that may not necessarily be semantic, such as image maps.

imagemap

The imagemap element supports the basic functionality of the HTML “client-side” image map markup. Imagemap allows you to designate a linkable area or region over an image, allowing a link in that region to display another topic.

An HTML client-side image map binds an image to the navigation structure (the "map") by means of an ID association from the map to the image. In contrast, the DITA version of imagemap markup simply includes the target image as the first required element in the markup, followed by a sequence of area elements that represent the links associated with the contained image.

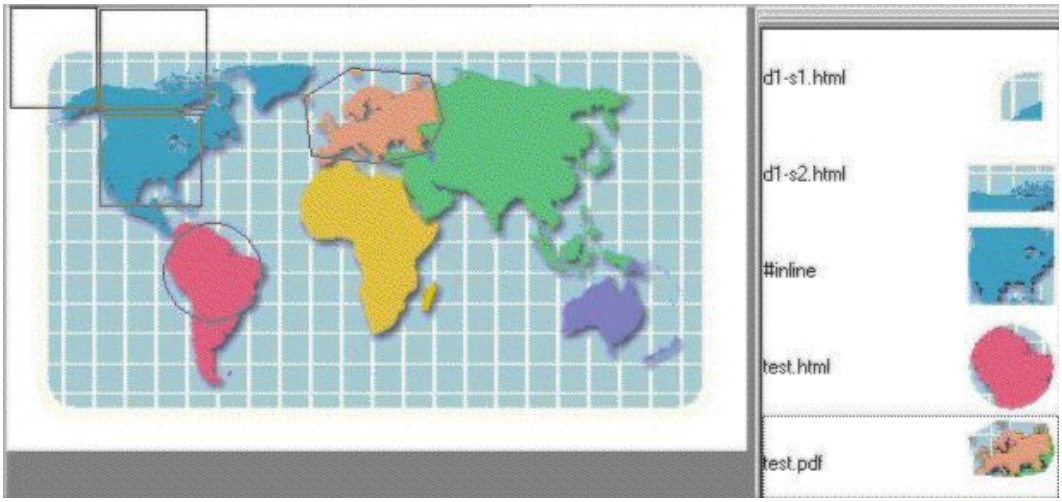
An imagemap structure can be output either to a standard HTML image map or to alternative forms of navigation (such as table-based image maps). When output as PDF, the minimal form would be to represent at least the image; advanced PDF output processors should be able to provide equivalent region-oriented hyperlinks.

The xref content contains the intended alternative text or hover text for the map area.

Example
A simple imagemap looks like this (note that the rendering will depend on how this markup is supported for particular output formats):

```
<imagemap>
 <image href="imagemapworld.jpg"></image>
 <area><shape>rect</shape><coords>2,0,53,59</coords>
  <xref href="d1-s1.xml">Section 1</xref>
 </area>
 <area><shape>rect</shape><coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
  <xref href="d1-s2.xml"></xref>
 </area>
 <area><shape>rect</shape><coords>54,62,114,116</coords>
  <xref href="#inline" type="topic"></xref>
 </area>
 <area><shape>circle</shape><coords>120,154,29</coords>
  <xref format="html" href="test.html"></xref>
 </area>
 <area><shape>poly</shape>
  <coords>246,39,200,35,173,52,177,86,215,90,245,84,254,65</coords>
  <xref format="pdf" href="test.pdf"></xref>
 </area>
</imagemap>
```

The areas defined correspond to this graphic image; with the areas visible:



The values for use in the shape and coords elements must follow the guidelines defined for image maps in HTML 4.1, Client-side image maps: the MAP and AREA elements

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((image on page 110) then (area on page 332*(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265
topic	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , pd on page 265
task	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , prereq on page 45 , context on page 46 , info on page 53 , tutorialinfo on page 69 , stepxmp on page 57 , choice on page 67 , choptionhd on page 60 , chdeschd on page 62 , choption on page 64 , chdesc on page 65 , stepresult on page 68 , result on page 70 , postreq on page 71 , pd on page 265
concept	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , pd on page 265

reference	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , refsyn on page 32 , proptypehd on page 36 , propvaluehd on page 37 , propdeschd on page 38 , pd on page 265
glossary	p on page 77 , note on page 78 , lq on page 125 , li on page 94 , itemgroup on page 225 , dd on page 105 , stentry on page 148 , draft-comment on page 193 , fn on page 196 , entry on page 141 , abstract on page 16 , body on page 20 , section on page 21 , example on page 23 , conbody on page 28 , glossdef on page 74 , pd on page 265

Inheritance:

+ topic/fig ut-d/imagemap

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at %display-atts; on page 496	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

area

The area element supports the basic functionality of the HTML image map markup.

Example

```
<area>
 <shape>rect</shape>
 <coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
 <xref href="d1-s2.dita"></xref>
</area>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((shape on page 335) then (coords on page 333) then (xref on page 86))

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	imagemap on page 330

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup ut-d/area

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

coords

The coords element specifies the coordinates of the linkable region in an imagemap area.

The element defines the starting point and size of that area. It uses the following data for the appropriate shapes:

Shape
    Data format
rect
    left-x, top-y, right-x, bottom-y
circle
    center-x, center-y, radius
poly
    x1, y1, x2, y2, ..., xN, yN. The first x and y coordinate pair and the last should be the same to close the polygon.

Pixels are recommended; they appear to work with all browsers.

Note: The behavior of image maps will depend on the browser on which they are rendered.

This element contains text data representing HTML coordinate data for image maps. The syntax of the coordinate data depends on the shape described by the coordinates.

Example

```
<area>
 <shape>rect</shape>
 <coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
 <xref href="d1-s2.dita"></xref>
```

```
</area>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	area on page 332

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph ut-d/coords

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not. Setting to "yes" will override the default. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing default for the translate value; because this element uses an actual default, it will always be treated as translate="no" unless overridden as described.	yes | no | -dita-use-con on page 509	"no"	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
dir	Specifies the directionality of text: left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or	(ltr | rtl | lro | rlo |	#IMPLIED	No

	right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	-dita-use-con on page 509		
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

shape

The shape element defines the shape of a linkable area in an imagemap.

The shape element supports these values:

rect
Define a rectangular region. If you leave the shape element blank, this is assumed.

circle
Define a circular region.

poly
Define a polygonal region.

default
Indicates the entire diagram.

Example

```
<area>
 <shape>rect</shape>
 <coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
 <xref href="d1-s2.dita"></xref>
</area>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference,	area on page 332

glossary	

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword ut-d/shape

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not. Setting to "yes" will override the default. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing default for the translate value; because this element uses an actual default, it will always be treated as translate="no" unless overridden as described.	yes | no | -dita-use-con on page 509	"no"	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
dir	Specifies the directionality of text: left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	(ltr | rtl | lro | rlo | -dita-use-con on page 509)	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Indexing group elements

The indexing domain provides several new elements for use with indexing. The new elements allow authors to define "See" and "See also" references, and to override the default sort order for a term.

Indexing domain elements typically work with the indexterm and index-base elements; information on those elements can be found using the links below.

index-see

An <index-see> element within an <indexterm> redirects the reader to another index entry that the reader should reference instead of the current one.

The <index-see> and <index-see-also> elements allow a form of redirection to another index entry within the generated index. The <index-see> element refers to an index entry that the reader should use *instead of* the current one, whereas the <index-see-also> element refers to an index entry that the reader should use *in addition to* the current one.

The <index-see> and <index-see-also> elements are ignored if their parent indexterm element contains any indexterm children.

Because an index-see indicates a redirection to use instead of the current entry, it is an error if, for any index-see, there is also an index-see-also or an indexterm for the same index entry (i.e., with an identical sort key). An implementation may (but need not) give an error message, and may (but need not) recover from this error condition by treating the index-see as an index-see-also.

It is not an error for there to be multiple index-see elements for a single index entry.

The following example illustrates the use of an <index-see> redirection element within an <indexterm>:

```
<indexterm>Carassius auratus
   <index-see>Goldfish</index-see>
</indexterm>
```

This will typically generate an index entry without a page reference:

- Carassius auratus, *see* Goldfish

The following example illustrates the use of an <index-see> redirection element to a more complex (multilevel) <indexterm>:

```
<indexterm>Feeding goldfish
   <index-see>Goldfish <indexterm>feeding</indexterm></index-see>
</indexterm>
```

This is part of the indexing markup that might generate index entries such as:

- Feeding goldfish
  - *see* Goldfish feeding
- Goldfish
  - feeding, 56
  - flushing, 128, 345

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or indexterm on page 199) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or indexterm on page 199) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	indexterm on page 199

Inheritance:

+ topic/index-base indexing-d/index-see

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

index-see-also

An <index-see-also> element within an <indexterm> redirects the reader to another index entry that the reader should reference in addition to the current one.

The <index-see> and <index-see-also> elements allow a form of redirection to another index entry within the generated index. The <index-see> element refers to an index entry that the reader should use *instead of* the current one, whereas the <index-see-also> element refers to an index entry that the reader should use *in addition to* the current one.

The <index-see> and <index-see-also> elements are ignored if their parent indexterm element contains any indexterm children.

In addition to its "see also" redirection, an index-see-also functions as a pointwise indexterm, thereby typically generating a page reference as well as the "see also" indication.

It is not an error for there to be multiple index-see-also elements for a single index entry.

The following example illustrates the use of an <index-see-also> redirection element within an <indexterm>:

```
<indexterm>Carp
   <index-see-also>Goldfish</index-see-also>
</indexterm>
```

This will typically generate a page reference to "Carp" and a redirection:

- Carp, 56
  - *see also* Goldfish

The following example illustrates the use of an <index-see-also> redirection element to a more complex (multilevel) <indexterm>:

```
<indexterm>Feeding
   <index-see-also>Goldfish
<indexterm>feeding</indexterm></index-see-also>
</indexterm>
```

This is part of the indexing markup that might generate index entries such as:

- Feeding, 348
  - *see also* Goldfish feeding
- Goldfish
  - feeding, 56
  - flushing, 128, 345

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or indexterm on page 199) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or indexterm on page 199) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	indexterm on page 199

Inheritance:

+ topic/index-base indexing-d/index-see-also

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

index-sort-as

The <index-sort-as> element specifies a sort phrase under which an index entry would be sorted.

This element gives an author the flexibility to sort an index entry in an index differently from how its text normally would be sorted. The common use for this is to disregard insignificant leading text, such as punctuation or words like "the" or "a". For example, the author may want <data> to be sorted under the letter D rather than the left angle bracket (<). An author may want to include such an entry under both the punctuation heading and the letter D, in which case there can be two index entry directives differentiated only by the sort order.

Certain languages may have special sort order needs. For example, Japanese index entries might be written partially or wholly in kanji, but need to be sorted in phonetic order according to its hiragana/katakana rendition. There is no reliable automated way to map written to phonetic text: for kanji text, there can be multiple phonetic possibilities depending on the context. The only way to correctly sort Japanese index entries is to keep the phonetic counterparts with the written forms. The phonetic text would be presented as the sort order text for indexing purposes.

The <index-sort-as> element's content is logically augmented by the textual content of its parent <indexterm> element to produce the effective sort key (i.e., the textual content acts as a secondary sort field), so two indexterms with different content but the same <index-sort-as> value would never merge into a single index entry.

An <index-sort-as> element provides sort key information for the indexterm that is its parent; therefore, in a multiple level indexterm, the index-sort-as only affects the level in which it occurs.

It is an error if there is more than one index-sort-as child for a given indexterm. An implementation may (but need not) give an error message, and may (but need not) recover from this error condition by ignoring all but the last index-sort-as.

This is an example of an index entry for <data> that will be sorted as "data":

```
<indexterm>&lt;data&gt;<index-sort-as>data</index-sort-as></indexterm>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword on page 83 or option on page 256 or parmname on page 259 or apiname on page 250 or cmdname on page 307 or msgnum on page 304 or varname on page 310 or wintitle on page 321 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	indexterm on page 199

Inheritance:

+ topic/index-base indexing-d/index-sort-as

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Map elements

A map describes the relationships among a set of DITA topics. The following are some examples of relationships that can be described in a map:

- Hierarchical (Parent/Child). Nested topics create a hierarchical relationship. The topic that does the nesting is the parent, and the topics that are nested are the children.
- Ordered. Child topics can be labeled as having an ordered relationship, which means they are referenced in a definite sequence.
- Family. Child topics can be labeled as having a family relationship, which means they all refer to each other.

The relationships defined in a map can be used to create a Table of Contents (TOC), aggregate topics into a PDF document, or to create links between topics in output.

map

The <map> element is used to define a map which describes the relationships among a set of resources, such as DITA topics. Maps consist of references to topics and other resources organized into hierarchies, groups, and tables. Maps provide a way to express these relationships in a single common format that can be used for different outputs.

The containing element for a map is the <map> element, which can take title and id attributes. Within the map, use the <topicref> element to add and organize references to the topics, and the <topicgroup> and <reltable> elements to provide non-hierarchical relationships. You can use the <map> element to set default attribute values for all <topicref> elements in the map.

The title element may optionally be used to provide a title for the map. The title element is allowed beginning with DITA 1.1, and is preferred over the title attribute. In some scenarios the title is purely informational, and is present as an aid to the author. In other scenarios it may be useful or even required. For example, if a map is converted to Eclipse Help, the Eclipse system will require a title for the resulting table of contents. In the bookmap specialization of map, the title element provides a title for the book represented by that map.

Example
In this example, there are six topicrefs. They are nested and have a hierarchical relationship. The file bats.dita is the parent topic and the other topics are its children. The hierarchy could be used to generate a PDF, a navigation pane in an information center, a summary of the topics, or related links between the parent topic and its children.

```
<map id="mybats">
 <title>Bats</title>
 <topicref href="bats.dita" type="topic">
  <topicref href="batcaring.dita" type="task"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batfeeding.dita" type="task"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batsonar.dita" type="concept"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batguano.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
  <topicref href="bathistory.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
 </topicref>
</map>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (topicmeta on page 351 *(optional)* then (navref on page 345 or anchor on page 344 or topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356 or reltable

	on page 346 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((title on page 12) *(optional)* then (topicmeta on page 351 *(optional)* then (navref on page 345 or anchor on page 344 or topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356 or reltable on page 346 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

Inheritance:

- map/map

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
title	An identifying title for the map. May be used or ignored, depending on the capabilities of the display mechanism. Note that in DITA 1.1, the map can include a title element, which is preferred over the title attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
id	This attribute may be used for debugging purposes, for example to identify which map a link was generated from.	ID	#IMPLIED	No
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a map that can be reused. See The conref attribute on page 508 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
anchorref	Identifies a location within another map file where this map will be anchored (added at runtime, using Eclipse navigation integration). For example, `anchorref="map1.ditamap/a1"` causes this map to be pulled into the location of the anchor point a1 in the other map1.ditamap.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http://dita.oas	hitecture/2005/
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	“1.1” (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(map mapgroup-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type,	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	on page 505 .			
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

anchor

The <anchor> element is used for runtime integration of navigation. It provides an integration point that another map can point to in order to insert its navigation into the current navigation tree. For those familiar with Eclipse help systems, this serves the same purpose as the <anchor> element in that system. It may not be supported for all output formats.

For build-time integration, you can use the conref attribute on an element inside the map (for example, a topicref) to pull in content from a matching element (for example, another topicref) in another map.

Example
In this example, an anchor is defined with an ID of "a1". This ID can be referenced by the anchorref attribute on another map's map element.

```
<map title="MyComponent tasks">
 <topicref navtitle="Start here" href="start.dita" toc="yes">
  <navref mapref="othermap2.ditamap"/>
  <navref mapref="othermap3.ditamap"/>
  <anchor id="a1"/>
 </topicref>
</map>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	map on page 342 , topicref on page 353 topichead on page 357 topicgroup on page 356

Inheritance:

- map/anchor

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	Provides an integration point that another map may reference in order to insert its navigation into the current navigation tree. The anchorref attribute on a map may be used to reference this attribute.	NMTOKEN	#REQUIRED	Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. See The conref attribute on page 508 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

navref

The <navref> represents a pointer to another map which should be preserved as a transcluding link rather than resolved. Output formats that support such linking will integrate the target when displaying the referencing map to an end user.

For example, if a map is converted to the Eclipse help system format, the DITA element `<navref mapref="other.ditamap"/>` should be converted to the Eclipse element `<link toc="other.xml"/>`. When Eclipse loads the referencing map, it will replace this link element with the contents of other.xml, provided that other.xml is available.

Note that not all output formats will support such linking. In order to include target maps directly without depending on the output format, you may reference the map with a topicref while setting the format attribute to "ditamap". For example, the following markup represents a literal inclusion of the map "other.ditamap" (similar to a conref):

```
<topicref href="other.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
```

Example

In this example, the map titled "MyComponent tasks" references the maps "othermap2.ditamap" and "othermap3.ditamap".

```
<map title="MyComponent tasks">
 <navref mapref="../com.ibm.xml.doc/othermap1.ditamap"/>
 <navref mapref="../com.ibm.xml.doc/othermap2.ditamap"/>
</map>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	map on page 342 , topicref on page 353topichead on page 357topicgroup on page 356

Inheritance:

- map/navref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
mapref	Specifies the URL (local filename, at least) of the map file to reference. It may point to a DITA map, or to a file that is appropriate for your output format (such as XML TOC file for Eclipse output).	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

reltable

The relationship table (<reltable>) defines relationships between topics, based on the familiar table model of rows (<relrow>), columns (<relheader>), and cells (<relcell>). The <relcell> elements can contain <topicref> elements, which are then related to other <topicref> elements in the same row (although not necessarily in the same cell). By default, the contents of a <reltable> element are not output for navigation or TOC purposes, and are used only to define relationships that can be expressed as topic-to-topic links.

Relationship tables can be used in conjunction with hierarchies and groups to manage all the related links in an information set.

Example

In this example, a relationship table is defined with three columns; one for "concept", one for "task", and one for "reference". Three cells are defined within one row. The first cell contains one concept topic: batsonar.dita. The second cell contains two task topics: batcaring.dita and batfeeding.dita. The third cell contains two reference topics: batguano.dita and bathistory.dita.

```
<map>
 <reltable>
  <relheader>
   <relcolspec type="concept"/>
   <relcolspec type="task"/>
   <relcolspec type="reference"/>
  </relheader>
  <relrow>
   <relcell><topicref href="batsonar.dita"/></relcell>
   <relcell>
     <topicref href="batcaring.dita"/>
     <topicref href="batfeeding.dita"/>
   </relcell>
   <relcell>
     <topicref href="batguano.dita"/>
     <topicref href="bathistory.dita"/>
   </relcell>
  </relrow>
 </reltable>
</map>
```

A table view of the tagging would look like this:

type="concept"	type="task"	type="reference"
batsonar.dita	batcaring.dita, batfeeding.dita	batguano.dita, bathistory.dita

On output, links should be added to topics that are in the same row, but not in the same cell. This allows simple maintenance of parallel relationships: for example, in this case, batcaring.dita and batfeeding.dita are two tasks that require the same supporting information (concept and reference topics) but might otherwise be unrelated. When topics in the same cell are in fact related, the cell's collection-type attribute can be set to family. If some cells or columns are intended solely as supporting information and should not link back to topics in other cells, you can set the linking attribute on the cell or relcolspec to targetonly.

In this example, the related links would be as follows:
batsonar.dita
batcaring.dita, batfeeding.dita, batguano.dita, bathistory.dita
batcaring.dita
batsonar.dita, batguano.dita, bathistory.dita
batfeeding.dita
batsonar.dita, batguano.dita, bathistory.dita
batguano.dita
batsonar.dita, batcaring.dita, batfeeding.dita
bathistory.dita
batsonar.dita, batcaring.dita, batfeeding.dita
Although the table may initially take some time to learn and manipulate, it is inherently a more efficient form to manage these links. It is also easier to see and manage patterns using the table; for example, the fact that batfeeding.dita and batcaring.dita have the same relationships to supporting information is clear from the table, but would require some comparison and counting to determine from just the definition list summary.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	((topicmeta on page 351 *(optional)* then (relheader on page 350 *(optional)* then (relrow on page 348) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	map on page 342 , bookmap on page 359
map	map on page 342

Inheritance:

- map/reltable

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
title	An identifying title for this element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts-no-toc; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A related set of attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

relrow

A <relrow> is a row in the relationship table. This creates a relationship between the cells in the row, which will end up expressed as links among the <topicref> elements in the cells.

Example
See reltable on page 346 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	(relcell on page 349)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	reltable on page 346

Inheritance:

- map/relrow

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

relcell

A <relcell> element is a cell in the relationship table. The <topicref> elements it contains will be related to topicrefs in other cells of the same row. By default, topicrefs in the same cell are not related to each other, unless you change the relcell's collection-type attribute to indicate that they are related.

Example
See reltable on page 346 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	relrow on page 348

Inheritance:

- map/relcell

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%topicref-atts;	A set of related attributes. See	parameter	*PE not*	Not

(collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	entity	*applicable*	applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

relheader

The <relheader> element is a row of column definitions (<relcolspec> elements) in a relationship table. Each table can have only one set of column definitions.

Example
See reltable on page 346 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	(relcolspec on page 351*)one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	reltable on page 346

Inheritance:

- map/relheader

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

relcolspec

A column definition in the relationship table. You can use <relcolspec> column definitions to set defaults for the attributes of <topicref> elements in the column. For example, you can set type="concept" to treat all untyped <topicref> elements in the column as concepts.

When default values are specified on a <relcell> or <relrow> element, those values are inherited before those on the <relcolspec>. The values on a <relcolspec> are inherited before those on the <reltable>.

Example
See reltable on page 346 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	(topicmeta on page 351*)optional)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	relheader on page 350

Inheritance:

- map/relcolspec

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

topicmeta

The <topicmeta> element defines the metadata that applies to a topic when it appears in

a map, and to the other topics in the map that are contained by the same element that contains the <topicmeta> element. When creating links, it can also be used to override the title and short description of the topic. In addition, it can be used to add index entries to referenced content using the <keywords> element.

Example

In this example, the metadata defined by the topicmeta element applies to the associated <topicref> (`bats.dita`) and all of its children. The <topicmeta> element contains an audience definition which indicates that `bats.dita` and its children are of interest to experienced programmers who are troubleshooting.

```
<map>
 <topicref href="bats.dita">
  <topicmeta>
   <audience type="programmer" job="troubleshooting"
experiencelevel="expert"/>
  </topicmeta>
  <topicref href="batcaring.dita"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batfeeding.dita"></topciref>
 </topicref>
</map>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((linktext on page 190) *(optional)* then (searchtitle on page 15) *(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19) *(optional)* then (author on page 153) *(any number)* then (source on page 178) *(optional)* then (publisher on page 173) *(optional)* then (copyright on page 158) *(any number)* then (critdates on page 162) *(optional)* then (permissions on page 168) *(optional)* then (audience on page 151) *(any number)* then (category on page 156) *(any number)* then (keywords on page 164) *(any number)* then (prodinfo on page 170) *(any number)* then (othermeta on page 167) *(any number)* then (resourceid on page 174) *(any number)* then (data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((linktext on page 190) *(optional)* then (searchtitle on page 15) *(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19) *(optional)* then (author on page 153 or authorinformation on page 448) *(any number)* then (source on page 178) *(optional)* then (publisher on page 173) *(optional)* then (copyright on page 158) *(any number)* then (critdates on page 162) *(optional)* then (permissions on page 168) *(optional)* then (audience on page 151) *(any number)* then (category on page 156) *(any number)* then (keywords on page 164) *(any number)* then (prodinfo on page 170) *(any number)* then (othermeta on page 167) *(any number)* then (resourceid on page 174) *(any number)* then (data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	map on page 342 , topicref on page 353 , reltable on page 346 , relcolspec on page 351 , draftintro on page 377 , preface on page 388 , chapter on page 373 , part on page 386 , appendix on page 363 , notices on page 384 , glossarylist on page 381 , topichead on page 357 , topicgroup on page 356
map	map on page 342 , topicref on page 353 , reltable on page 346 , relcolspec on page 351 , topichead on page 357 , topicgroup on page 356

Inheritance:

- map/topicmeta

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
lockmeta	Indicates whether any of the meta information should be replaced by meta information in the referenced topic.	(yes | no | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

topicref

The <topicref> element identifies a topic (such as a concept, task, or reference) or other resource. A <topicref> can contain other<topicref> elements, allowing you to express navigation or table-of-contents hierarchies, as well as implying relationships between the containing <topicref> and its children. You can set the collection-type of a container <topicref> to determine how its children are related to each other. You can also express relationships among <topicref>s using group and table structures (using <topicgroup> and <reltable>). Relationships end up expressed as links in the output (with each participant in a relationship having links to the other participants by default).

You can fine tune the output from your map by setting different attributes on topicrefs: for example, the *linking* attribute controls how its relationships to other topicrefs are expressed as links, and the *toc* attribute controls whether the topicref shows up in TOC or navigation output.

Example
In this example, there are six topicrefs. They are nested and have a hierarchical relationship. Bats.dita is the parent topic and the other topics are its children.

```
<map title="Bats">
 <topicref href="bats.dita" type="topic">
  <topicref href="batcaring.dita" type="task"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batfeeding.dita" type="task"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batsonar.dita" type="concept"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batguano.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
  <topicref href="bathistory.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
 </topicref>
</map>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356 or navref on page 345 or anchor on page 344 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356 or navref on page 345 or anchor on page 344 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	map on page 342 , topicref on page 353 , relcell on page 349 , frontmatter on page 380, backmatter on page 365, draftintro on page 377, preface on page 388, chapter on page 373, part on page 386, appendix on page 363, notices on page 384, glossarylist on page 381, topichead on page 357, topicgroup on page 356
map	map on page 342 , topicref on page 353 , relcell on page 349 , topichead on page 357, topicgroup on page 356

Inheritance:

- map/topicref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A pointer to the resource represented by the <topicref>. References to DITA content cannot be below the topic level: that is, you cannot reference individual elements inside a topic. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
query	This attribute is deprecated. It may be removed in the future.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Map group elements

The mapgroup domain elements represent particular containment strategies within a set of topicrefs in a map.

topicgroup

The <topicgroup> element is for creating groups of <topicref> elements without affecting the hierarchy, as opposed to nested <topicref> elements within a <topicref>, which does imply a structural hierarchy. It is typically used outside a hierarchy to identify groups for linking without affecting the resulting toc/navigation output.

In the following example, each of the topicref elements inherit the audience and linking attribute values. This way the attributes can be set in one place for a group of topicref elements, without affecting the navigation hierarchy.

```
<topicgroup audience="novice" linking="none">
  <topicref href="this.dita"/>
  <topicref href="that.dita"/>
  <topicref href="theother.dita"/>
</topicgroup>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356 or navref on page 345 or anchor on page 344 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356 or navref on page 345 or anchor on page 344 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	map on page 342 , topicref on page 353 , relcell on page 349 , frontmatter on page 380, backmatter on page 365, draftintro on page 377, preface on page 388, chapter on page 373, part on page 386, appendix on page 363, notices on page 384, glossarylist on page 381, topichead on page 357, topicgroup on page 356
map	map on page 342 , topicref on page 353 , relcell on page 349 , topichead on page 357, topicgroup on page 356

Inheritance:

+ map/topicref mapgroup-d/topicgroup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

topichead

The <topichead> element provides a title-only entry in a navigation map, as an alternative to the fully-linked title provided by the <topicref> element.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356 or navref on page 345 or anchor on page 344 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356 or navref on page 345 or anchor on page 344 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	map on page 342 , topicref on page 353 , relcell on page 349 , frontmatter on page 380, backmatter on page 365, draftintro on page 377, preface on page 388, chapter on page 373, part on page 386, appendix on page 363, notices on page 384, glossarylist on page 381, topichead on page 357 , topicgroup on page 356
map	map on page 342 , topicref on page 353 , relcell on page 349 , topichead on page 357 , topicgroup on page 356

Inheritance:

+ map/topicref mapgroup-d/topichead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Bookmap content elements

The Bookmap specialization of ditamap supports standard book production for collections of DITA topics. The bookmap specialization includes many elements

The OASIS document type for the bookmap specialization also includes substantial book metadata for describing authors, based on the eXtensible Name and Address Language, or xNAL.

bookmap

The <bookmap> element is a map file used to organize DITA content into a traditional book format.

The <bookmap> element is used to define a map which describes the relationships among a set of DITA topics intended to be configured as a traditional book. Bookmaps consist of references to topics organized as book content. The topic references therefore are labeled according to the book components they point to, such as booktitle, frontmatter, chapter, appendix, etc.

The containing element for a bookmap is the <bookmap> element, which can take title, id, conref, and anchorref attributes. Within the bookmap, use the various book components and subcomponents to add and organize references to the topics comprising the book. You can use the bookmap element to set default attribute values for all topic references in the map.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((title on page 12) or (booktitle on page 371) *(optional)* then (bookmeta on page 394 *(optional)* then (frontmatter on page 380 *(optional)* then (chapter on page 373 *(any number)* then (part on page 386) *(any number)* then (appendix on page 363 *(any number)* then (backmatter on page 365 *(optional)* then (reltable on page 346) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

Inheritance:

- map/map bookmap/bookmap

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by href and conref attributes, and for external applications that refer to DITA content.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a map that can be reused. See The conref attribute on page 508 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
anchorref	Identifies a location within another map file where this map will be anchored (added at runtime, using Eclipse navigation integration). For example, `anchorref="map1.ditamap/a1"` causes this map to be pulled into the location of the anchor point a1 in the other map1.ditamap.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http://dita.oas	hitecture/2005/
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	“1.1” (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(map mapgroup-d) (topic indexing-d) (topic xnal-d)	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at %select-atts; on page 499	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

abbrevlist

The <abbrevlist> element references a list of abbreviations. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants an abbreviation list generated at the particular location.

Example

```
<abbrevlist href="abbrev.dita"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model

bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists on page 370

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/abbrevlist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%localization-atts;)				
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

amendments

The <amendments> element references a list of amendments or updates to the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants an amendments list generated at the particular location.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	backmatter on page 365

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/amendments

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	(&) should be used to indicate that character			
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

appendix

The <appendix> element references a topic as a appendix within a book.

Example
Appendix topics that include subtopics:

```
<appendix href="intro.dita">
 <topicref href="caring.dita"/>
 <topicref href="feeding.dita"/>
</appendix>
<appendix href="setup.dita">
 <topicref href="prereq.dita"/>
 <topicref href="download.dita"/>
</appendix>
```

Appendix that references a ditamap of content:

```
<appendix href="intro.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap on page 359

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/appendix

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

backmatter

The <backmatter> element contains the material that follows the main body of a document and any appendixes. It may include items such as a colophon, legal notices, and various types of book lists such as a glossary or an index.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(booklists on page 370 or notices on page 384 or dedication on page 376 or colophon on page 374 or amendments on page 362 or topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap on page 359

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/backmatter

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
query	This attribute is deprecated. It may be removed in the future.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

bibliolist

The <bibliolist> element references a list of bibliographic entries within the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants a bibliography, containing links to related books, articles, published papers, or other types of material, generated at the particular location.

Example

See backmatter on page 365 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists on page 370

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/bibliolist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.			
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

bookabstract

The <bookabstract> element references a topic used within a bookmap as a brief summary of book content, generally output as part of the book's front matter. It is used to help the reader quickly evaluate the book's purpose

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter on page 380

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/bookabstract

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

booklibrary

The <booklibrary> element contains the library information for a book. Library entries contain information about the series, library, or collection of documents to which the book belongs.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booktitle on page 371

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/booklibrary

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

booklist

The <booklist> element is a general purpose element, designed for use in specializations, that references a list of particular types of topics within the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants that list of topics generated at the particular location. For example, it could be used in a specialization to reference the location of a list of program listings or of authors of topics.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists on page 370

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/booklist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

booklists

The <booklists> element references lists of various kinds within the book. For example, it

can be used within front matter to reference a <toc>, <tablelist>, and <figurelist>, or within back matter to reference a <glossarylist>, <indexlist>, and <abbrevlist>. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants the lists generated at the <booklists> location.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((toc on page 390) or (figurelist on page 379) or (tablelist on page 389) or (abbrevlist on page 360) or (trademarklist on page 392) or (bibliolist on page 366) or (glossarylist on page 381) or (indexlist on page 382) or (booklist on page 369)) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter on page 380, backmatter on page 365

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/booklists

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

booktitle

The <booktitle> element contains the title information for a book. , including <booklibrary> data, a <maintitle> and subtitle (<titlealt>) as required.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((booklibrary on page 368) *(optional)* then (mainbooktitle on page 384) then (booktitlealt on page 372

	) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap on page 359

Inheritance:

- topic/title bookmap/booktitle

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at %id-atts; on page 498	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at %localization-atts; on page 501 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

booktitlealt

The <booktitlealt> element contains the alternative title, subtitle, or short title for a book.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booktitle on page 371

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/booktitlealt

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default	Required?

			Value	
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

chapter

The <chapter> element references a topic as a chapter within a book.

Example
Chapter topics that include subtopics:

```
<chapter href="intro.dita">
 <topicref href="caring.dita"/>
 <topicref href="feeding.dita"/>
</chapter>
<chapter href="setup.dita">
 <topicref href="prereq.dita"/>
 <topicref href="download.dita"/>
</chapter>
```

Chapter that references a ditamap of content:

```
<chapter href="intro.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap on page 359 , part on page 386

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/chapter

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	(URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

colophon

The <colophon> element references a topic describing how this document was created. In publishing, a colophon describes details of the production of a book. This information generally includes the typefaces used, and often the names of their designers; the paper, ink and details of the binding materials and methods may also receive mention. In the case of technical books, a colophon may specify the software used to prepare the text and diagrams for publication.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter on page 380backmatter on page 365

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/colophon

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

dedication

The <dedication> element references a topic containing a dedication for the book, such as to a person or group.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter on page 380, backmatter on page 365

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/dedication

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	<pre>First topic in different file:
	  href="filename.dita"
	Specific topic in different file:
	  href="filename.dita#topicid"</pre>
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

draftintro

The <draftintro> element references a topic used as an introduction to the draft of this book.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

bookmap	frontmatter on page 380

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/draftintro

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at	parameter	*PE not*	Not

	%global-atts; on page 497	entity	*applicable*	applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

figurelist

The <figurelist> element references a list of figures in the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants a list of figures generated at the particular location.

Example

See frontmatter on page 380 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists on page 370

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/figurelist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.			
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

frontmatter

The <frontmatter> element contains the material that precedes the main body of a document. It may include items such as an abstract, a preface, and various types of book lists such as a <toc>, <tablelist>, or <figurelist>.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(booklists on page 370 or notices on page 384 or dedication on page 376 or colophon on page 374 or bookabstract on page 367 or draftintro on page 377 or preface on page 388 or topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap on page 359

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/frontmatter

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default	Required?

			Value	
query	This attribute is deprecated. It may be removed in the future.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

glossarylist

The <glossarylist> element references a list of glossary entries within the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants a glossary list generated at the particular location.

Example

See backmatter on page 365 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists on page 370

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/glossarylist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.			
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

indexlist

The <indexlist> element lists the index entries in the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants an index generated at the particular location.

Example

See backmatter on page 365 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists on page 370

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/indexlist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at	parameter	*PE not*	Not

	%global-atts; on page 497	entity	*applicable*	applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

mainbooktitle

The <mainbooktitle> element contains the primary title information for a book.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booktitle on page 371

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/mainbooktitle

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

notices

The <notices> element references special notice information, for example, legal notices about supplementary copyrights and trademarks associated with the book. .

Example

References a notices topic for legal content.

```
<ibmbackmatter>
 <notices href="notices.dita"/>
 <backbooklists>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter on page 380 , backmatter on page 365

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/notices

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	description for the new copy.			
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

part

The <part> element references a part topic for the book. A new part is started. Use <part> to divide a document's chapters into logical groupings. For example, in a document that contains both guide and reference information, you can define two parts, one containing the guide information and the other containing the reference information.

Example
Part topics that include chapters and subtopics:

```
<part href="guide.dita">
 <chapter href="intro.dita">
  <topicref href="caring.dita"/>
  <topicref href="feeding.dita"/>
 </chapter>
 <chapter href="setup.dita">
  <topicref href="prereq.dita"/>
  <topicref href="download.dita"/>
 </chapter>
</part>
<part href="ref.dita">
 <chapter href="commands.dita">
  <topicref href="care.dita"/>
  <topicref href="feed.dita"/>
 </chapter>
 <chapter href="apis.dita">
  <topicref href="acare.dita"/>
  <topicref href="afeed.dita"/>
 </chapter>
</part>
```

Parts that reference ditamaps of content:

```
<part href="intro.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
<part href="guide.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then ((topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356) or (chapter on page 373)) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap on page 359

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/part

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%localization-atts;)				
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

preface

The <preface> element references introductory information about a book, such as the purpose and structure of the document.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta on page 351) *(optional)* then (topicref on page 353 or topichead on page 357 or topicgroup on page 356) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter on page 380

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/preface

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	(&) should be used to indicate that character			
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

tablelist

The <tablelist> element references a list of tables within the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants a list of tables generated at the particular location.

Example

See frontmatter on page 380 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists on page 370

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/tablelist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

toc

The <toc> element references the table of contents within the book. It indicates to the

processing software that the author wants a table of contents generated at the particular location.

Example

See frontmatter on page 380 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists on page 370

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/toc

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.			
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

trademarklist

The <trademarklist> element references a list of trademarks within the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants a list of trademarks generated at the particular location.

Example

See backmatter on page 365 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists on page 370

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/trademarklist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.			
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See %topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc; on page 505 .	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

Bookmap metadata elements

The Bookmap specialization of ditamap supports standard book production for collections of DITA topics. This section contains the metadata elements used by bookmap to store book related metadata.

Note: The OASIS document type for the bookmap specialization includes the xNAL domain specialization for describing the author or authors of a document. All elements that appear in that domain (the authorinformation element and all of its descendants) are described in the xNAL domain section, rather than in this bookmap metadata section.

bookmeta

The <bookmeta> element contains information about the book that is not considered book content, such as copyright information, author information, and any classifications.

Example
In this example:

- The <authorinformation> contains the content for a reader's comment form; the <maintainer> element references that author information to create the reader comment form.
- The <prodinfo> element contains the book's product information. This includes the product name, and the version, release, and modification information.
- The <bookid> element contains the book's form number and part number information. The <maintainer> element contains the reader comment information; point to the <authorinformation> element for a complete RCF.
- The <bookrights> element contains the book's copyright information.

```
<bookmeta>
 <authorinformation id="rcf">
  <organizationinfo><namedetails><organizationnamedetails>
  <organizationname>IBM</organizationname>
  </organizationnamedetails></namedetails>
  <addressdetails>ATTN: Dept 542<thoroughfare>3905 37th Street
NW</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Rochester, MN<postalcode>55901-6666</postalcode></locality>
  <country>USA</country></addressdetails>
  <contactnumbers><contactnumber
type="telephone">800-555-1212</contactnumber>
  <contactnumber type="fax">800-555-1213</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>phred@us.ibm.com</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
  <urls><url>http://w3-03.ibm.com/ids/page/636</url></urls>
  </organizationinfo>
 </authorinformation>
 <prodinfo>
  <prodname>My Product</prodname>
  <vrmlist><vrm release="Release 1" version="Version 3"/></vrmlist>
 </prodinfo>
<bookid><bookpartno>99F9999</bookpartno><booknumber>SC00-0000-00</booknumber>
 <maintainer href="#rcf"></maintainer></bookid>
<bookrights><copyrfirst><year>1996</year></copyrfirst><copyrlast><year>2006</year>
</copyrlast><bookowner><organization>IBM</organization></bookowner></bookrights>
</bookmeta>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((linktext on page 190) *(optional)* then (searchtitle on page 15) *(optional)* then (shortdesc on page 19) *(optional)* then (author on page 153 or authorinformation on page 448)*(any number)* then (source on page 178) *(optional)* then (publisherinformation on page 434)*(any number)* then (critdates on page 162) *(optional)* then (permissions on page 168) *(optional)* then (audience on page 151) *(any number)* then (category on page 156) *(any number)* then (keywords on page 164) *(any number)* then (prodinfo on page 170) *(any number)* then (othermeta on page 167) *(any number)* then (resourceid on page 174) *(any number)* then (bookid on page 403)*(optional)* then (

	bookchangehistory on page 397 *(any number)* then (bookrights on page 412 *(any number)* then (data on page 212) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap on page 359

Inheritance:

- map/topicmeta bookmap/bookmeta

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
lockmeta	Indicates whether any of the meta information should be replaced by meta information in the referenced topic.	(yes | no | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

approved

The <approved> element contains information about when and by whom the book was approved during its publication history.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person on page 429) or (organization on page 427) *(any number)* then (revisionid on page 439) *(optional)* then (started on page 440 *(optional)* then (completed on page 414 *(optional)* then (summary on page 440 *(optional)* then (data on page 212) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookchangehistory on page 397

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/approved

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

bookchangehistory

The <bookchangehistory> element contains information about the history of the book's creation and publishing lifecycle, who wrote, reviewed, edited, and tested the book, and when these events took place.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((reviewed on page 437 *(any number)* then (edited on page 419 *(any number)* then (tested on page 441) *(any number)* then (approved on page 395) *(any number)* then (bookevent on page 399 *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmeta on page 394

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookchangehistory

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	-dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

bookevent

The <bookevent> element indicates a general event in the publication history of a book. This is an appropriate element for specialization if the current set of specific book event types, that is, review, edit, test or approval, does not meed your needs.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((bookeventtype on page 401 *(optional)* then ((person on page 429) or (organization on page 427)) *(any number)* then (revisionid on page 439 *(optional)* then (started on page 440 *(optional)* then (completed on page 414 *(optional)* then (summary on page 440 *(optional)* then (data on page 212) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookchangehistory on page 397

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookevent

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	attribute.			

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at	parameter	*PE not*	Not

%id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	%univ-atts; on page 502	entity	*applicable*	applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

bookeventtype

The <bookeventtype> element indicates the specific nature of a <bookevent>, such as updated, indexed, or deprecated. The required name attribute indicates the event's type.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookevent on page 399

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookeventtype

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
name	The name of the event represented by this element.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

bookid

The <bookid> element contains the publisher's identification information for the book, such as part number, edition number and ISBN number.

Example

See bookmeta on page 394 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((bookpartno on page 408*(any number)* then (edition on page 421*(optional)* then (isbn on page 422)*(optional)* then (booknumber on page 404*(optional)* then (volume on page 443*(any number)* then (maintainer on page 424*(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmeta on page 394

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookid

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

booknumber

The <booknumber> element contains the book's form number, such as SC21-1920.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookid on page 403

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/booknumber

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.		(Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

bookowner

The <bookowner> element contains the owner of the copyright.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((person on page 429) or (organization on page 427))* *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

bookmap	bookrights on page 412

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookowner

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	• Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

bookpartno

The <bookpartno> element contains the book's part number; such as 99F1234. This is generally the number that the publisher uses to identify the book for tracking purposes.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookid on page 403

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookpartno

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

bookrestriction

The <bookrestriction> element indicates whether the book is classified, or restricted in some way. The value attribute indicates the restrictions; this may be a string like "All Rights Reserved," representing the publisher's copyright restrictions.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookrights on page 412

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookrestriction

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
value	Describes restrictions on this version of the publication. Values are confidential,	(confidential | restricted |	(beta | limited |	Yes

	restricted, licensed, unclassified, and -dita-use-conref-target on page 509 .	licensed | unclassified | -dita-use-con	general | -dita-use-con	
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

bookrights

The <bookrights> element contains the information about the legal rights associated with the book, including copyright dates and owners.

Example

See bookmeta on page 394 .

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((copyrfirst on page 414*(optional)* then (copyrlast on page 416*(optional)* then (bookowner on page 406) then (bookrestriction on page 410) *(optional)* then (summary on page 440*(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmeta on page 394

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookrights

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%localization-atts;)				
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

completed

The <completed> element indicates a completion date for some type of book event, such as a review, editing, or testing.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((year on page 445) then (month on page 426) then (day on page 418)*(optional)*) *(optional)*) or ((month on page 426) then (day on page 418)*(optional)* then (year on page 445)) or ((day on page 418) then (month on page 426) then (year on page 445)))

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	published on page 432 , reviewed on page 437 , edited on page 419 , tested on page 441 , approved on page 395 , bookevent on page 399

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/completed

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

copyrfirst

The <copyfirst> element contains the first copyright year within a multiyear copyright statement.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(year on page 445)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookrights on page 412

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/copyrfirst

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed	No

	detailed information on supported values and processing implications.		as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

copyrlast

The <copylast> element contains the last copyright year within a multiyear copyright statement.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(year on page 445)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

bookmap	bookrights on page 412

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/copyrlast

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	• Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

day

The <day> element denotes a day of the month.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	started on page 440started on page 440started on page 440completed on page 414 , completed on page 414 , completed on page 414

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/day

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default	Required?

			Value	
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

edited

The <edited> element contains information about when and by whom the book was edited during its publication history.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person on page 429) or (organization on page 427)) *(any number)* then (revisionid on page 439) *(optional)* then (started on page 440) *(optional)* then (completed on page 414) *(optional)* then (summary on page 440) *(optional)* then (data on page 212) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookchangehistory on page 397

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/edited

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other			

	common DITA attributes on page 508			

edition

The <edition> element contains the edition number information, such as First Edition, or Third Edition, used by a publisher to identify a book.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookid on page 403

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/edition

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

isbn

The <isbn> element contains the book's International Standard Book Number (ISBN).

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookid on page 403

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/isbn

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed	No

	detailed information on supported values and processing implications.		as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

maintainer

The <maintainer> element contains information about who maiintains the document; this can be an organization or a person.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person on page 429) or (organization on page 427) *(any number)* then (data on page 212) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

bookmap	bookid on page 403

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/maintainer

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	• Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

month

The <month> element denotes a month of the year.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	started on page 440,started on page 440,started on page 440,completed on page 414 , completed on page 414 , completed on page 414

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/month

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default	Required?

			Value	
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

organization

The <organization> element contains the name of an organization. Note that unlike <organizationname>, the <organization> element is not restricted to usage within <authorinformation>; it does not have to contain the name of an authoring organization.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	publisherinformation on page 434 published on page 432 reviewed on page 437 edited on page 419 , tested on page 441 approved on page 395 , bookevent on page 399 , maintainer on page 424 , bookowner on page 406

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/organization

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

person

The <person> element contains information about the name of a person. Note that unlike the <personname> element, the <person> element is not restricted to describing the names of authors.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	publisherinformation on page 434published on page 432reviewed on page 437edited on page 419 , tested on page 441approved on page 395 , bookevent on page 399 , maintainer on page 424 , bookowner on page 406

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/person

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	`href="filename.dita"`
	Specific topic in different file:
	`href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

printlocation

The <printlocation> element indicates the location where the book was printed. Customarily, the content is restricted to the name of the country.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	publisherinformation on page 434

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/printlocation

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

published

The <published> element contains information about the person or organization publishing the book, the dates when it was started and completed, and any special restrictions associated with it.

Contains

Doctype	Content model

bookmap	(((person on page 429) or (organization on page 427)) *(any number)* then (publishtype on page 435) *(optional)* then (revisionid on page 439 *(optional)* then (started on page 440 *(optional)* then (completed on page 414) *(optional)* then (summary on page 440 *(optional)* then (data on page 212) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	publisherinformation on page 434

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/published

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed	No

	detailed information on supported values and processing implications.		as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

publisherinformation

The <publisherinformation> contains information about what group or person published the book, where it was published, and certain details about its publication history. Other publication history information is found in the <bookchangehistory> element.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person on page 429) or (organization on page 427)) *(any number)* then (printlocation on page 430) *(any number)* then (published on page 432) *(any number)* then (data on page 212) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmeta on page 394

Inheritance:

- topic/publisher bookmap/publisherinformation

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

publishtype

The <publishtype> element indicates whether the book is generally available or is restricted in some way. The value attribute indicates the restrictions.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	published on page 432

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/publishtype

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	• Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
value	Describes the status of this publication. Values are beta, limited, general, and -dita-use-conref-target on page 509 .	CDATA	(beta | limited | general | -dita-use-con	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

reviewed

The <reviewed> element contains information about when and by whom the book was reviewed during its publication history.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person on page 429) or (organization on page 427)) *(any number)* then (revisionid on page 439) *(optional)* then (started on page 440 *(optional)* then (completed on page 414) *(optional)* then (summary on page 440 *(optional)* then (data on page 212) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookchangehistory on page 397

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/reviewed

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

revisionid

The <revisionid> element indicates the revision number or revision ID of the book. The processing implementation determines how the level is displayed. Common methods include using a dash, for example "-01". or a period, such as ".01".

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	published on page 432 , reviewed on page 437 , edited on page 419 , tested on page 441approved on page 395 , bookevent on page 399

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/revisionid

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at	parameter	*PE not*	Not

%id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	%univ-atts; on page 502	entity	*applicable*	applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

started

The <started> element indicates a start date for some type of book event, such as a review, editing, or testing.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((year on page 445) then (month on page 426) then (day on page 418) *(optional)*) *(optional)*) or ((month on page 426) then (day on page 418) *(optional)* then (year on page 445)) or ((day on page 418) then (month on page 426) then (year on page 445)))

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	published on page 432 , reviewed on page 437 , edited on page 419 , tested on page 441 , approved on page 395 , bookevent on page 399

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/started

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

summary

The <summary> element contains a text summary associated with a book event (such as <approved> or <reviewed>) or with the list of copyrights for the book.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	published on page 432 , reviewed on page 437 , edited on page 419 , tested on page 441 approved on page 395 , bookevent on page 399 , bookrights on page 412

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/summary

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

tested

The <tested> element contains information about when and by whom the book was tested during its publication history.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person on page 429) or (organization on page 427)) *(any number)* then (revisionid on page 439) *(optional)* then (started on page 440) *(optional)* then (completed on page 414) *(optional)* then (summary on page 440) *(optional)* then (data on page 212) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookchangehistory on page 397

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/tested

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

volume

The <volume> element contains the book's volume number, such as Volume 2.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookid on page 403

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/volume

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.			
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

year

The <year> element denotes a year.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	started on page 440 , started on page 440 , started on page 440 , completed on page 414 , completed on page 414 , completed on page 414 , copyrfirst on page 414 , copyrlast on page 416

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/year

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

xNAL domain elements

The xNAL domain elements represent a subset of the Extensible Name and Address Standard. The domain can be included in any topic type or map, although the implementations provided by OASIS only include it in the bookmap specialization. It is used to encode information about the author or authors of DITA information.

xNAL usage guidelines

Extended information and usage examples for DITA bookmap metadata elements associated with OASIS xNAL Standard (extensible Name and Address Language).

DITA bookmaps use a set of elements associated with a subset of the OASIS extensible Name and Address Language (xNAL) specification (Version 2) to denote name and address information related to persons and organizations.

While the elements share element names, and the expectation is that content written using this type of metadata should be straightforward to transform, the element name pairs do not share content models. The difference in content models reflects the different purposes of the two standards. The purpose of the name and address elements in DITA is to identify persons or organizations associated with the creation of a document; the purpose of the name and address elements in xNAL is to support customer resource management.

The examples shown after the table provide sample tagging methods for name and address information, using the DITA elements associated with xNAL.

DITA elements associated with xNAL elements

The set of bookmap elements associated with elements from the OASIS extensible Name and Address Language (xNAL) standard are listed in the table below.

Table1. DITA elements associated with xNAL elements

addressdetails	honorific	otherinfo
administrativearea	lastname	person
authorinformation	locality	personinfo
contactnumber	localityname	personname
contactnumbers	middlename	postalcode
country	namedetails	thoroughfare
emailaddress	organization	url
emailaddresses	organizationinfo	urls
firstname	organizationname	
generationidentifier	organizationnamedetails	'

Example 1: Tagging personal information in DITA

This example shows a way to tag the following personal name and description.

Mr. Ram V. Kumar Jr.
Chief Technologist
MSI Business Solutions

```
<authorinformation>
  <personinfo>
    <namedetails>
      <personname>
        <honorific>Mr.</honorific>
        <firstname>Ram</firstname>
        <middlename>V.</middlename>
        <lastname>Kumar</lastname>
        <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
        <otherinfo>Chief Technologist</otherinfo>
      </personname>
    </namedetails>
  </personinfo>
  <organizationinfo>
    <namedetails>
      <organizationnamedetails>
        <organizationname>MSI Business Solutions</organizationname>
      </organizationnamedetails>
    </namedetails>
  </organizationinfo>
</authorinformation>
```

Example 2: Tagging address information in DITA

This example shows a way to tag the following address.

23 Archer St.
Chatsworth
NSW 2067
Australia

```
<addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Archer St.</thoroughfare>
  <locality>
    <localityname>Chatsworth</localityname>
    <postalcode>2067</ppostalcode>
  </locality>
  <administrativearea>NSW</administrativearea>
  <country>Australia</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Example 3: Tagging complex name and address information in DITA

This example shows two ways to tag a fairly complex collection of personal, organizational, and address information.

Mr. Samuel L. Johnson Jr.
Chief Technologist
c/o XYZ Corporation
52 New Main St.
Carrboro, NC 27510 USA
email: johnson@example.com
phone: 919-555-7987

This method tags all the organizational information as associated with the identified person.

```
<personinfo>
   <namedetails>
      <personname>
          <firstname>Samuel</firstname>
          <middlename>L.</middlename>
          <lastname>Johnson</lastname>
          <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
          <otherinfo>Chief Technologist</otherinfo>
          <otherinfo>c/o XYZ Corporation </otherinfo>
      </personname>
   </namedetails>
   <addressdetails>
      <thoroughfare>52 New Main St.</thoroughfare>
      <locality>
```

```
         <localityname>Carrboro</localityname>
         <postalcode>27510</postalcode>
      </locality>
      <administrativearea>NC</administrativearea>
      <country>USA</country>
   </addressdetails>
   <contactnumbers>
      <contactnumber>919-555-7987</contactnumber>
   </contactnumbers>
   <emailaddresses>
      <emailaddress>johnson@example.com</emailaddress>
   </emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

The following method separates the person and organization information. It might be used if it were necessary to associate address information with organizations rather than persons.

```
<authorinformation>
  <personinfo>
    <namedetails>
      <personname>
        <firstname>Samuel</firstname>
        <middlename>L.</middlename>
        <lastname>Johnson</lastname>
        <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
        <otherinfo>Chief Technologist</otherinfo>
      </personname>
    </namedetails>
    <contactnumbers>
      <contactnumber>919-555-7987</contactnumber>
    </contactnumbers>
    <emailaddresses>
      <emailaddress>johnson@example.com</emailaddress>
    </emailaddresses>
  </personinfo>
  <organizationinfo>
    <namedetails>
      <organizationnamedetails>
        <organizationname>XYZ Corporation</organizationname>
        <otherinfo>c/o </otherinfo>
      </organizationnamedetails>
    </namedetails>
    <addressdetails>
      <thoroughfare>52 New Main St.</thoroughfare>
      <locality>
         <localityname>Carrboro</localityname>
         <postalcode>27510</postalcode>
      </locality>
      <administrativearea>NC</administrativearea>
      <country>USA</country>
    </addressdetails>
  </organizationinfo>
</authorinformation>
```

authorinformation

The <authorinformation> element contains detailed information about the author or authoring organization.

```
<authorinformation>
 <personinfo>
  <namedetails><personname>
    <firstname>Derek</firstname>
    <middlename>L.</middlename>
    <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
    <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
    <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
  </personname></namedetails>
  <addressdetails>
    <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
    <locality>Emerald City</locality>
    <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
    <country>USA</country>
  </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
```

```
 </personinfo>
</authorinformation>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((personinfo on page 480 or organizationinfo on page 474)*(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	topicmeta on page 351 , bookmeta on page 394

Inheritance:

+ topic/author xnal-d/authorinformation

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

addressdetails

The <addressdetails> element contains information about the address of the author or authoring group.

```
 <personinfo>
  <namedetails><personname>
    <firstname>Derek</firstname>
    <middlename>L.</middlename>
    <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
    <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
    <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
  </personname></namedetails>
  <addressdetails>
    <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
    <locality>Emerald City</locality>
    <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
    <country>USA</country>
  </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
 </personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or locality on page 468 or administrativearea on page 451 or thoroughfare on page 484 or country on page 455)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personinfo on page 480 or organizationinfo on page 474

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/addressdetails

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

administrativearea

The <administrativearea> element contains information about a county, state, or province.

```
<addressdetails>
<thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
<locality>Emerald City</locality>
<administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
<country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	addressdetails on page 450

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/administrativearea

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

contactnumber

A <contactnumber> element contains a telephone number.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
  <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
```

```
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	contactnumbers on page 453

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/contactnumber

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	that character			
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

contactnumbers

The <contactnumbers> element contains a list of telephone and fax numbers.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
   <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
```

```
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(contactnumber on page 451) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personinfo on page 480organizationinfo on page 474

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/contactnumbers

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

country

The <country> element contains the name of a country.

```
<addressdetails>
```

```
 <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
 <locality>Emerald City</locality>
 <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
 <country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	addressdetails on page 450

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/country

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

emailaddress

The <emailaddress> element contains an e-mail address.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
   <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses>
  <emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress>
 </emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	emailaddresses on page 458

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/emailaddress

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

emailaddresses

The <emailaddress> element contains a list of e-mail addresses.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
   <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
```

```
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(emailaddress on page 456) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personinfo on page 480organizationinfo on page 474

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/emailaddresses

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	details on supported values.			
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

firstname

The <firstname> element contains the person's first name.

```
<namedetails>
 <personname>
  <honorific>Dr.</honorific>
  <firstname>Derek</firstname>
  <middlename>L.</middlename>
  <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
  <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
  <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname>
</namedetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personname on page 482

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/firstname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed	No

	detailed information on supported values and processing implications.		as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

generationidentifier

The <generationidentifier> element contains information about the person's generation, such as: Jr, III, or VIII.

```
<namedetails><personname>
  <firstname>Derek</firstname>
  <middlename>L.</middlename>
  <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
  <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
  <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
</personname></namedetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personname on page 482

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/generationidentifier

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an	No

			ancestor)	
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

honorific

The <honorific> element contains the person's title, such as: Dr., Mr., Ms., HRH.. or Grand Exalted Wizard.

```
<namedetails><personname>
 <honorofic>Dr.</honorific>
 <firstname>Derek</firstname>
 <middlename>L.</middlename>
 <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
 <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
 <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
</personname></namedetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

bookmap	personname on page 482

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/honorific

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	• Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

lastname

The <lastname> element contains the person's last name.

```
<namedetails><personname>
 <honorific>Dr.</honorific>
 <firstname>Derek</firstname>
 <middlename>L.</middlename>
 <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
 <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
 <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
</personname></namedetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personname on page 482

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/lastname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.			
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

locality

The <locality> element contains information about the city and postal or ZIP code. It can contain the information directly, or by acting as a wrapper for <localityname> and <postalcode>.

```
<addressdetails>
<thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
<locality>
<localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
<postalcode>66780</postalcode>
</locality>
<administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
<country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221 or localityname on page 469 or postalcode on page 484)*(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	addressdetails on page 450

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/locality

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

localityname

The <localityname> element contains the name of the locality or city.

```
<addressdetails>
<thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
<locality>
<localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
<postalcode>66780</postalcode>
</locality>
<administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
<country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	locality on page 468

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/localityname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

middlename

The <middlename> element contains the person's middle name or initial.

```
<namedetails><personname>
 <honorific>Dr.</honorific>
 <firstname>Derek</firstname>
 <middlename>L.</middlename>
 <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
 <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
 <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
</personname></namedetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personname on page 482

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/middlename

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

namedetails

The <namedetails> element contains information about the name of the author or the authoring organization.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
   <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((personname on page 482 or organizationnamedetails on page 477)*(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personinfo on page 480 organizationinfo on page 474

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/namedetails

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other			

	common DITA attributes on page 508			

organizationinfo

The <organizationinfo> element contains detailed information about an authoring organization.

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  <organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
 <urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((namedetails on page 472) *(optional)* then (addressdetails on page 450) *(optional)* then (contactnumbers on page 453) *(optional)* then (emailaddresses on page 458) *(optional)* then (urls on page 487 *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	authorinformation on page 448

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/organizationinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	(URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

organizationname

The <organizationname> element contains name information about the authoring organization.

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  <organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
 <urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or ph on page 80 or term on page 231 or xref on page 86 or cite on page 123 or q on page 127 or boolean on page 234 or state on page 229 or keyword on page 83 or tm on page 205 or image on page 110 or draft-comment on page 193 or required-cleanup on page 227 or fn on page 196 or indextermref on page 203 or indexterm on page 199 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	organizationnamedetails on page 477

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/organizationname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

organizationnamedetails

The <organizationnamedetails> element contains information about the name of an authoring organization.

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  <organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
 <urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((organizationname on page 476) *(optional)* then (otherinfo on page 477 *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	namedetails on page 472

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/organizationnamedetails

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

otherinfo

The <otherinfo> element contains other name information about the author or authoring organization.

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  <organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	organizationnamedetails on page 477 , personname on page 482

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/otherinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows: `Target elsewhere in the same`	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	<pre>file:
	  href="#topicid"
	First topic in different file:
	  href="filename.dita"
	Specific topic in different file:
	  href="filename.dita#topicid"</pre>
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

personinfo

The <personinfo> element is a wrapper containing all relevant data about a person, including name, address, and contact information.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
   <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((namedetails on page 472) *(optional)* then (addressdetails on page 450) *(optional)* then (contactnumbers on page 453) *(optional)* then (emailaddresses on page 458) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	authorinformation on page 448

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/personinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character			

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

personname

The <personname> element contains name information about the author.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <personname>
   <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
  </personname>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((honorific on page 464) *(optional)* then (firstname on page 460) *(any number)* then (middlename on page 470) *(any number)* then (lastname on page 466) *(any number)* then (generationidentifier on page 462) *(optional)* then (otherinfo on page 477) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	namedetails on page 472

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/personname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;,	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

%localization-atts;)				
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

postalcode

The <postalcode> element contains information about the postal code or the ZIP code.

```
<addressdetails>
<thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
<locality>
<localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
<postalcode>66780</postalcode>
</locality>
<administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
<country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	locality on page 468

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/postalcode

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

thoroughfare

The <thoroughfare> element contains information about the thoroughfare - for example, the street, avenue, or boulevard - on which an address is located.

```
<addressdetails>
<thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
<locality>
<localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
<postalcode>66780</postalcode>
</locality>
<administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
<country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	addressdetails on page 450

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/thoroughfare

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

url

The <url> element contains a Uniform Resource Locator (URL).

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  <organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
```

```
 <urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword on page 83 or term on page 231 or data on page 212 or data-about on page 208 or foreign on page 217 or unknown on page 221) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	urls on page 487

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/url

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.			
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

urls

The <urls> element contains a list of Uniform Resource Locators (URLs).

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  <organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
```

```
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
 <urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(url on page 485) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	organizationinfo on page 474

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/urls

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at %univ-atts; on page 502	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at %global-atts; on page 497	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in Other common DITA attributes on page 508			

DITAVAL elements

You can create a conditional processing profile to identify which values you want to conditionally process for a particular output, build, or other purpose. The profile has the extension .ditaval to identify it to conditional processing systems.

The .ditaval format has several elements: val, the root element, can contain a style-conflict element followed by prop or revprop elements; the prop and revprop elements can contain startflag and endflag elements; and the startflag and endflag elements can contain alt-text elements.

Notes on ditaval messages

It is recommended but not required that conditional processing code provide a report of any attribute values encountered in content that do not have an explicit action associated with them.

Note on ditaval flagging of images

If an image in DITA content becomes flagged using a background color, the color should be represented as a thick border. If a foreground color is expressed, it should be represented as a thin border.

val

<val> is the root element of a ditaval file.

Contains

style-conflict on page 490 (*optional*) then (prop on page 491 *or* revprop on page 492) (*any number*)

style-conflict

The style-conflict element declares behavior to be used when one or more flagging methods collide on a single content element.

In case of conflicts between flagging methods at different levels (for example, a section is flagged green and a paragraph within the section is flagged red) the most deeply nested flagging method applies.

In case of conflicts between flagging methods on the same element (for example, a single element is being flagged with both green and red color) it is recommended that the conflicts be resolved as follows:

Flagging method

Conflict behavior

startflag/endflag
: Add all flags that apply.

color
: Follow the style-conflict @foreground-conflict-color setting, or use an output-appropriate default color if no conflict color is set.

backcolor
: Follow the style-conflict @background-conflict-color setting, or use an output-appropriate default color if no conflict color is set

style
: Add all font styles that apply. If two different kinds of underline are used, default to the heaviest (double underline) and use the foreground-conflict-color.

changebar
Add all change bars that apply.

Contains

(empty)

Contained by

val on page 490

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
foreground-conflict-color	The color to be used when more than one flagging color applies to a single content element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
background-conflict-color	The color to be used when more than one flagging background color applies to a single content element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no

prop

Identifies an attribute, and usually values in the attribute, to take an action on. The attribute must be a conditional processing attribute: platform, product, audience, props. and otherprops; or a specialization of the props attribute. There can be at most one occurrence of a "prop" element with no attribute specified (setting a default action for every prop element), at most one for each attribute with no value specified (setting the default action for a specific attribute), and at most one with each attribute value specification (to avoid conflicting actions for the same attribute value).

Contains

startflag on page 494 (*optional*) then endflag on page 494 (*optional*)

Contained by

val on page 490

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
att	The attribute to be acted upon. Must be one of props, audience, platform, product, otherprops, or a specialization of props. If the att attribute is absent, then the prop element declares a default behavior for any conditional processing attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
val	The value to be acted upon. If the val attribute is absent, then the prop element declares a default behavior for any value in the specified attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
action	The action to be taken. The options are: **`include`**	(include | exclude |	#IMPLIED	yes

	Include the content in output. This is the default behavior unless otherwise set. **`exclude`** Exclude the content from output (if all values in the particular attribute are excluded). **`passthrough`** Include the content in output, and preserve the attribute value as part of the output stream for further processing by a runtime engine, for example runtime filtering based on individual user settings. The value should be preserved in whatever syntax is required by the target runtime. Values that are not explicitly passed through should be removed from the output stream, even though the content is still included. **`flag`** Include and flag the content on output (if the content has not been excluded).	passthrough | flag)		
color	If flag has been set, the color to use to flag text. Colors may be entered by name or code. Processor support is recommended for the color names listed in http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xsl-20011015/sl and for the 6 digit hex code form (#rrggbb, case insensitive). If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
backcolor	If flag has been set, the color to use as background for flagged text. Colors may be entered by name or code. Processor support is recommended for the color names listed in http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xsl-20011015/sl and for the 6 digit hex code form (#rrggbb, case insensitive). If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
style	If flag has been set, the text style to use for flagged text. The following values are enumerated: • underline • double-underline • italics • overline • bold If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	(underline | double-underlin | italics | overline | bold)	#IMPLIED	no

revprop

Identifies a value in the rev attribute that should be flagged in some manner. Unlike the other conditional processing attributes, which can be used for both filtering and flagging,

the rev attribute can only be used for flagging. There can be at most one occurrence of a "revprop" element for each attribute value specification (to avoid conflicting actions for the same attribute value).

The default alternate text for revprop start of change is a localized translation of "Start of change". The default alternate text for revprop end of change is a localized translation of "End of change".

Contains

startflag on page 494 (*optional*) then endflag on page 494 (*optional*)

Contained by

val on page 490

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
val	The value to be acted upon. If the val attribute is absent, then the revprop element declares a default behavior for any value in the rev attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
action	The action to be taken. The options are: **`include`** Include the content in output without flags. This is the default behavior unless otherwise set. **`passthrough`** Include the content in output, and preserve the attribute value as part of the output stream for further processing by a runtime engine, for example runtime filtering based on individual user settings. The value should be preserved in whatever syntax is required by the target runtime. Values that are not explicitly passed through should be removed from the output stream, even though the content is still included. **`flag`** Include and flag the content on output (if the content has not been excluded).	(include | passthrough | flag)	#IMPLIED	yes
changebar	When flag has been set, specify a changebar color, style, or character, according to the changebar support of the target output format. If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
color	If flag has been set, the color to use to flag text. Colors may be entered by name or code. Processor support is recommended for the color names listed in http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xsl-20011015/sl and for the 6 digit hex code form (#rrggbb, case	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no

	insensitive). If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.			
backcolor	If flag has been set, the color to use as background for flagged text. Colors may be entered by name or code. Processor support is recommended for the color names listed in http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xsl-20011015/sl and for the 6 digit hex code form (#rrggbb, case insensitive). If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
style	If flag has been set, the text style to use for flagged text. The following values are enumerated: • underline • double-underline • italics • overline • bold If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	(underline | double-underlin | italics | overline | bold)	#IMPLIED	no

startflag

The startflag takes an optional image reference and an optional alt-text element for identifying the beginning of flagged content. If an image is specified, the specified image will be used to flag the beginning of the content, with the alt-text contents as alternative text. If alt-text is specified without an image, that text will be used to flag the content instead of an image. If no image and no alt-text are specified, then this element has no defined purpose. The startflag element is allowed inside either prop or revprop.

Contains

alt-text on page 495 (*optional*)

Contained by

prop on page 491 , revprop on page 492

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
imageref	The relative path or URL to the image file. The attribute uses conventional URL syntax to point to the resource: href="../images/construction.gif"	CDATA	#IMPLIED	yes

endflag

The endflag takes an optional image reference and an optional alt-text element for identifying the end of flagged content. If an image is specified, the specified image will be used to flag the end of the content, with the alt-text contents as alternative text. If alt-text is specified without an image, that text will be used to flag the content instead of an image. If no image and no alt-text are specified, then this element has no defined purpose. The endflag element is allowed inside either prop or revprop.

Contains

alt-text on page 495 (*optional*)

Contained by

prop on page 491 , revprop on page 492

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
imageref	The relative path or URL to the image file. The attribute uses conventional URL syntax to point to the resource: href="../images/construction.gif"	CDATA	#IMPLIED	yes

alt-text

An element allowed inside either startflag or endflag to provide alternate text for an image, when the imageref attribute sets an image to be used for flagging. The default alternate text for revprop start of change is a localized translation of "Start of change". The default alternate text for revprop end of change is a localized translation of "End of change".

Contains

text data

Contained by

startflag on page 494 , endflag on page 494

Commonly referenced attributes

Several parts of a language reference are common between many locations, such as the descriptions for the selection and property attributes of DITA elements. These are described as sets to reduce unnecessary duplication of common information.

%display-atts;

Display attributes is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD that includes attributes whose values may be used for affecting the display of a topic or its selection by search tools.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scale	Specifies a percentage, selected from an enumerated list, that is used to resize fonts in relation to the normal text size. This attribute is primarily useful for print-oriented display. The scale attribute provides an acknowledged style-based property directly on DITA elements. For the table and fig elements, the intent of the property is to allow authors to adjust font sizes on the content of the containing element, primarily for print accomodation. An image in these contexts is to be scaled only by its own direct scale property. If not specifically scaled, such an image is unchanged by the scale property of its parent table or fig.	(50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 | -dita-use-conref on page 509)	#IMPLIED	No
frame	Specifies which portion of a border should surround the element. Allowable values are: **top** Draw a line before the element **bottom** Draw a line after the element **topbot** Draw a line both before and after the element **all** Draw a box around the element **sides** Draw a line at each side of the element **none** Don't draw any lines around this element **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(top | bottom | topbot | all | sides | none | -dita-use-conref	#IMPLIED	No

	Some DITA processors or output formats may not be able to support all values.			
expanse	Determines the horizontal placement of the element. Allowable values are: "page" places the element on the left page margin; "column" aligns the element with the current column margin; "textline" aligns the element with the left margin of the current text line and takes indention into account. See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on the conref value. For non-paginated output, such as XHTML, some values may not be supported. In DITA tables, in place of the expanse attribute used by other DITA elements, the pgwide attribute is used in order to conform with the OASIS Exchange Table Model. This attribute has a similar semantic (1=page width; 0=resize to galley or column).	(page | column | textline | -dita-use-conref	#IMPLIED	No

Example

The %display-atts; parameter entity is used within the DITA dtds as a common definition for attributes that affect presentation of certain elements. Not all of these capabilities have been provided yet for DITA topic processing. A typical example might be:

```
<codeblock scale="90" frame="topbot" expanse="page">
/* a long sample program */
Do forever
  Say "Hello, World"
End
</codeblock>
```

%global-atts;

Debugging attributes, normally hidden from authoring view.

These attributes are intended to store debugging information during intermediate processing. One possible implementation is to use `xtrf` (xml-trace-filename) to store the original source filename through intermediate processing steps, and use `xtrc` (xml-trace-counter) to store an element counter for repositioning authoring tools at the originating element location. If values are assigned in this way in the first stage of a processing stream, values in these attributes can then be used for error recovery.

These attributes are normally hidden from authors and exposed only to processing tools or editor macros. Values used in these attributes may be implementation-dependent.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
xtrf	xml-trace-filename, the original filename	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xtrc	xml-trace-counter, an element counter for repositioning editors at a known edit location	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

%id-atts;

ID attributes (%id-atts;) is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD that includes attributes that enable the naming and referencing of elements in a DITA topic: *id* and *conref* .

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by href and conref attributes, and for external applications that refer to DITA content.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. See The conref attribute on page 508 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Example

The %id-atts; parameter entity is used within the DITA dtds as a common definition for attributes available to most elements that enable you to name or reference (link to or fetch) the content of particular elements. Some typical examples include:

```
<p id="mainpara">The war cry of Kudzu University, <q id="warcry">To the
victor
go the spoils!</q>, is often heard on campus during freshman
orientation.</p>
<p id="dullpara">One often hears the cry, <q conref="#topicid/warcry"/>,
when
students are competing in intramural sports.</p>
```

%rel-atts;

Relational attributes (<%rel-atts;>) is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD that includes attributes whose values may be used for representing navigational relationships. These attributes occur only on elements that represent relationships between topics.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed	No

	detailed information on supported values and processing implications.		as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	
role	The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time. See The role attribute on page 512 for information on supported values.	(parent | child | sibling | friend | next | previous | cousin | ancestor | descendant | *sample* | *external* | *[deprecated]* other | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
otherrole	Indicates an alternate role. This value is used when the role attribute is set to other.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The %rel-atts; parameter entity is used within the DITA DTDs as a common definition for attributes available to elements that represent topic-to-topic relationships. Some typical examples include:

```
<link type="task" role="child" href="how2uninst.dita" scope="local"/>
```

%select-atts;

Attributes that support both filtering and flagging include *props* , *platform* , *product* , *audience* , and *otherprops* . Attribute *base* is a generic attribute that is available for specialization; it can be specialized for values that have a simple value syntax like the filter attributes, but is not itself a filtering or flagging attribute. Attribute *rev* only lets you flag information that matches a run-time parameter. Attribute *importance* provides a range of values for applications to use as needed. The %select-atts; entity also includes additional entities that allow it to include specializations of the props and base attribute. See the DITA Architectural Specification for more information on filtering or flagging with attributes, as well as for information on specialization the base and props attributes.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.			
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

importance	A range of values that describe an importance or priority attributed to an element. For example, in steps of a task, the attribute indicates whether a step is optional or required.	obsolete | deprecated | optional | default | low | normal | high | recommended | required | urgent | -dita-use-conre	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conre	#IMPLIED	No

Example

The %select-atts; parameter entity is used within the DITA DTDs as a common definition for attributes available to most elements for you to enable the content for improved retrievability or for selection. Some typical examples include:

```
The <keyword platform="Linux">chmod</keyword> command...
<ph product="WhiteknuckleHandsoap">Amalgamated Cleansers get the
grime!</ph>
<msgph audience="programmer administrator">Divide by -1 error.</msgph>
<ph otherprops="java">When using Java, use the
  <apiname>com.ibm.obscureclass</apiname> to calculate the value.</ph>
<p importance="recommended" rev="3.2">Update anti-virus software
often.</p>
```

Note that, aside from those with pre-defined values, these attributes allow multiple values. For example, the audience attribute in the example indicates that the message is of interest to both programmers and administrators.

%localization-atts;

Localization attributes is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD, which defines a set of common attributes available on most DITA elements.

The localization-atts entity includes:

- *translate*
- *xml:lang*
- *dir*

Detailed information on localization with DITA, including several best practices on the use of these attributes, is available in the DITA Architectural Specification.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
translate	Indicates whether the content of the	yes | no |	#IMPLIED	No

	element should be translated or not. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing default for the translate value.	-dita-use-con on page 509		
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
dir	Specifies the directionality of text: left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	(ltr | rtl | lro | rlo | -dita-use-con on page 509)	#IMPLIED	No

The translate, xml:lang, and dir attributes identify language-specific words or phrases for specific processing (or non-processing, in the case of translate="no").

```
<p>The cordial response to the question is
<q translate="no" xml:lang="de-de" dir="ltr">nein.</q></p>
```

%univ-atts;

Universal attributes is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD, which defines a set of common attributes available on most DITA elements.

The univ-atts entity includes:

- the attributes in the select-atts on page 499 parameter entity
- the attributes in the id-atts on page 498 parameter entity
- the attributes in the localization-atts on page 501 parameter entity

Attributes

This section describes the attributes from select-atts, followed by those from id-atts, followed by those from localization-atts.

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

	attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.			
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
importance	A range of values that describe an importance or priority attributed to an	obsolete | deprecated |	#IMPLIED	No

	element. For example, in steps of a task, the attribute indicates whether a step is optional or required.	optional | default | low | normal | high | recommended | required | urgent | -dita-use-conre		
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conre	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by href and conref attributes, and for external applications that refer to DITA content.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. See The conref attribute on page 508 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing default for the translate value.	yes | no | -dita-use-conon page 509	#IMPLIED	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
dir	Specifies the directionality of text:	(ltr | rtl | lro |	#IMPLIED	No

	left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	rlo | -dita-use-con on page 509)		

See examples for the select-atts on page 499 and id-atts on page 498 parameter entries.

%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;

The %topicref-atts; parameter entity represents a group of attributes used in numerous map elements, such as map, topicref, relcolspec, relcell, topichead, and topicgroup. The set is identical to those in the topicref-atts-no-toc attribute set, except that %topicref-atts; does not provide a default for the toc attribute.

Attributes

The table below represents the topicref-atts attribute set. For elements that use topicref-atts-no-toc, such as <reltable>, the toc attribute has a default of "no".

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
collection-type	Collection types describe how links relate to each other. A family collection represents a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other. Sequence indicates that the order of the child topics is significant; output processors will typically link between them in order. Unordered indicates that the order is not significant. Choice indicates that one of the children should be selected. If no value is specified, processors should treat the default as "unordered", although no default is specified in the DTD. See this topic on page 509 for more information on the conre value. Usage of the collection-type attribute on <reltable> and <relcolspec> is currently undefined, and reserved for future use.	(unordered | sequence | choice | family | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See The type attribute on page 510 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the	(local | peer | external |	#IMPLIED	No

	current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	-dita-use-con		
locktitle	This attribute makes sure the *navtitle* attribute is used if it is present; if *locktitle* isn't set to “yes” , the *navtitle* attribute is ignored and text is retrieved from the target **yes** The navtitle in the map is used. **no** Default. The navtitle or title of the topic is used. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See The format attribute on page 512 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
linking	Defines some specific linking characteristics of a topic's current location in the map. If the value is not specified locally, but it specified on an ancestor, it will inherit the value of on the ancestor. **targetonly** A topic can only be linked to and cannot link to other topics. **sourceonly** A topic cannot be linked to but can link to other topics. **normal** A topic can be linked to and can link to other topics. Use this to override the linking value of a	(targetonly | sourceonly | normal | none | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No

	parent topic. **none** A topic cannot be linked to or link to other topics. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.			
toc	Specifies whether a topic appears in the table of contents (toc). If the value is not specified locally, but it specified on an ancestor, it will inherit the value of on the ancestor.	(yes | no | -dita-use-con on page 509)	#IMPLIED	No
print	Specifies whether the topic should be included in a portable document format (PDF) file. If the value is not specified locally, but it specified on an ancestor, it will inherit the value of on the ancestor. **yes** Include the topic in a PDF file. **no** Do not include the topic in a PDF file. **printonly** Directs processing to skip the parent topic for non-print outputs of map. **-dita-use-conref-target** See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.	(yes | no | printonly | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
search	Describes whether the target is available for searching. If the value is not specified locally, but it specified on an ancestor, it will inherit the value of on the ancestor. **yes** **no** **-dita-use-conref-target on page 509**	(yes | no | -dita-use-con	#IMPLIED	No
chunk	When a set of topics is transformed using a map, the chunk attribute allows multi-topic documents to be broken into smaller files, and multiple individual topics to be combined into larger combined documents. For a detailed description of the chunk attribute and its usage see the section on Chunking in Chapter 4 of the DITA 1.1 Architectural Specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Other common DITA attributes

The following attributes are not part of an entity group but are common to many elements.

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	*Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.* The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values allow DITA tools to work correctly with ranges of related content. In a generalized DITA document the class attribute value in the generalized instance may differ from the default value for the class attribute for the element as given in the DTD or schema.	CDATA	*Default value differs for each element*	No
outputclass	Names a role that the element is playing. The role must be consistent with the basic semantic and expectations for the element. In particular, the outputclass attribute can be used for styling during output processing; HTML output will typically preserve outputclass for CSS processing.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
keyref	The keyref attribute is reserved for future use. The OASIS DITA Technical Committee expects to finish designing this attribute in the next release of the DITA standard.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
xml:space	This attribute is provided on <pre>, <lines>, and on elements specialized from them. It ensures that parsers in editors and transforms respect the line-end characters that are part of the data in those elements. It is intended to be part of the default properties of these elements, and not for authors to change or delete.	(preserve)	#FIXED 'preserve'	Yes

Complex attribute definitions

Several DITA attributes require more explanation than can fit in a single table cell. Those attributes are collected here.

The conref attribute

This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. It allows reuse of DITA components from phrases to topics, as well as maps and pieces of maps.

Full details on how to resolve the conref attribute can be found in the DITA Architectural specification. This topic primarily includes information on the actual syntax required when

using the conref attribute.
Note: When using the conref attribute on an element, the content of that element is ignored. For example, if a phrase is marked up like this:

```
<ph conref="#topic/ph">Something</ph>
```

the word "Something" will be replaced by the target of the conref.

Using conref to refer to a topic

The conref attribute may be specified on a topic element to pull in another topic. For example, you could create a series of topics in a composite (ditabase) document or nested context for authoring convenience and then reference each topic individually into a new target location. During output processing, a lookup process will pull the contents of the first topic into the calling topic markup that has the conref attribute.

The conref value follows the same conventions as HTML for normal file links. To refer to target content in a different file, put the full URL of that topic before the # character.

```
Target elsewhere in the same file:
  conref="#topicid"
First topic in different file:
  conref="filename.xml"
Specific topic in different file:
  conref="filename.xml#topicid"
```

Using conref to refer to an element within a topic

The conref attribute also allows you to reuse content within a topic. For example, you could create a <note> in a topic and then reference its ID (using conref) from a <note> in another topic. This allows the content of the note to be used in both locations.

The value of conref is a URI that includes (or consists entirely of) a fragment identifier consisting a number sign ('#') followed by the ID of the topic that contains the element that is the target of the content reference, a slash ("/"), and the ID of the target element. If the URI consists of only a fragment identifier, the target element must be in the same XML document as the reference.

```
Local target:
  conref="#topicid/elementid"
In different file:
  conref="filename.xml#topicid/elementid"
```

Using conref to refer to an element within a map

Within a map, the conref attribute references an equivalent element in the same map or another map. The value of conref is a URI that includes (or consists entirely of) a fragment identifier consisting of the number sign ('#') followed by the ID of the target element. If the URI consists of only a fragment identifier, the target element must be in the same XML document as the reference.

Note that if the conref attribute is used on the map element itself, the attribute may only point to a complete map in another file or resource.

```
Local target:
  conref="#elementID"
In different file:
  conref="othermap.ditamap#elementID"
```

Using the -dita-use-conref-target value

The value -dita-use-conref-target is available on enumerated attributes, and may also be specified manually on other attributes. It indicates that when the element uses conref to pull in content, the attribute with a value of "-dita-use-conref-target" should also be pulled in from the target.

Ordinarily, when an element uses conref, any other attributes specified locally will be preserved. This feature can be used to override settings on the conref target that may not be appropriate in the new context. This causes problems when attributes are required. For example, the topichead element requires the navtitle attribute. Because the attribute is required, any topichead that uses conref must also provide a navtitle attribute – even if it is empty. Standard DITA processing rules would cause this value to override the navtitle on the target, even though the target navtitle is probably desired.

This example shows a map where the topichead element uses conref. It specifies the required navtitle attribute, as well as the toc attribute. In the resolved element, navtitle is not preserved, because it uses -dita-use-conref-target; the toc attribute is preserved using normal rules.

```
Pre-resolution:
<map><title>Conref demonstration</title>
  <topichead id="heading"
             navtitle="This is a heading"
             toc="yes"
             print="yes">
    <topicref href="topic.dita" navtitle="content"/>
  </topichead>
  <topichead conref="#heading"
             navtitle="-dita-use-conref-target"
             toc="no">
  </topichead>
</map>

Post-resolution:
<map><title>Conref demonstration</title>
  <topichead id="heading"
             navtitle="This is a heading"
             toc="yes"
             print="yes">
    <topicref href="topic.dita" navtitle="content"/>
  </topichead>
  <topichead navtitle="This is a heading"
             toc="no"
             print="yes">
    <topicref href="topic.dita" navtitle="content"/>
  </topichead>
</map>
```

More information on this and other conref rules can be found in the DITA Architectural specification.

The type attribute

The type attribute is most often used on linking elements to describe the target of a cross-reference. It is also used on the note element to describe the type of the current note, and on several other elements for varying purposes.

The descriptions for the type attribute on linking elements and on note are too long to fit in the usual attribute table, so they are included in this section; for other elements, such as audience, copyright, or object, the description can be found with the element.

Using type on a linking element

The type attribute describes the target of a cross-reference and may generate cross-reference text based on that description. Only the <xref> element can link to content below the topic level: other types of linking can target whole topics, but not parts of topics. Typically <xref> should also be limited to topic-level targets, unless the output is primarily print-oriented. Web-based referencing works best at the level of whole topics, rather than anchor locations within topics.

When the type attribute is unspecified, it should be determined by inspecting the target if possible. If the target cannot be inspected for some reason, the value should default to "topic".

If the type attribute is specified when referencing DITA content, it should match one of the values in the target's class attribute. For example, if type="topic", the link could be to a generic topic, or any specialization of topic, including concept, task, and reference. Applications may, but need not, issue a warning when the specified or inherited type attribute value does not match the target (or a specialization ancestor of the target).

Some possible values for use on the xref element and its specializations include:

fig
Indicates a link to a figure.
table
Indicates a link to a table.
li
Indicates a link to an ordered list item.
fn
Indicates a link to a footnote.
section
"section" indicates a link to a section.

Other values that may be used on any linking element include:

concept, task, reference, topic
Cross-reference to a topic type.
(no value)
The processor should retrieve the actual type from the target if available. If the type cannot be determined, the default should be treated as "topic".

Other values can be used to indicate other types of topics or elements as targets. Processing is only required to support the above list, or specializations of types in that list. Supporting additional types as targets may require the creation of processing overrides.

Using type in a note element

In a note element, this defines the type of note. For example, if the note is a tip, the word **Tip** may be used to draw the reader's attention to it. If type is set to other, the value of the othertype attribute may be used. If you use othertype, many processors will require additional information on how to process the value. Allowable values for the type attribute are:

note
This is just a note.
attention
Please pay extra attention to this note.
caution
Care is required when proceeding.
danger
Important! Be aware of this before doing anything else.
fastpath
This note will speed you on your way.
important
This note is important.
remember
Don't forget to do what this note says.
restriction
You can't do what this note says.
tip
This is a fine little tip.
other
This is something other than a normal note.
-dita-use-conref-target

See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.

The format attribute

The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. The processing default for format is “dita” . If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.

Using the format attribute

Possible values for this attribute include:

dita
The destination uses DITA topic markup, or markup specialized from a DITA topic. Unless otherwise specified, the corresponding default type will be treated as "topic."

html
The format of the linked-to resource is HTML or XHTML.

pdf
The format of the linked-to resource is PDF (opens a new window).

ditamap
The linked-to resource is a DITA map. It represents a referenced hierarchy at a position within referencing hierarchy, and a referenced relationship table included outside the referencing hierarchy

(no value)
Processors default to "dita"

For other formats, you can use the file extension without the "." (for example, in a link to file "readme.txt", use "txt" as the value).

The role attribute

The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time.

Supported values

Allowable values for the role attribute are:

parent
Indicates a link to a topic that is a parent of the current topic.

child
Indicates a link to a direct child such as a directly nested or dependent topic.

sibling
Iindicates a link between two children of the same parent topic.

friend
Indicates a link to a similar topic that is not necessarily part of the same hierarchy.

next
Indicates a link to the next topic in a sequence.

previous
Indicates a link to the previous topic in a sequence.

cousin
Indicates a link to another topic in the same hierarchy that is not a parent, child, sibling, next, or previous.

ancestor
Indicates a link to a topic above the parent topic.

descendent
Indicates a link to a topic below a child topic.

sample

Deprecated.

external

Deprecated--use the scope="external" attribute to indicate external links..

other

Indicates any other kind of relationship or role. Enter that role as the value for the otherrole attribute.

-dita-use-conref-target

See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value on page 509 for more information.

Alphabetical listing of DITA elements

This section provides links to every element in the guide, listed in alphabetical order.

abbrevlist on page 360
abstract on page 16
addressdetails on page 450
administrativearea on page 451
alt on page 113
amendments on page 362
anchor on page 344
apiname on page 250
appendix on page 363
approved on page 395
area on page 332
audience on page 151
author on page 153
authorinformation on page 448
b on page 238
backmatter on page 365
bibliolist on page 366
body on page 20
bookabstract on page 367
bookchangehistory on page 397
bookevent on page 399
bookeventtype on page 401
bookid on page 403
booklibrary on page 368
booklist on page 369
booklists on page 370
bookmap on page 359
bookmeta on page 394
booknumber on page 404
bookowner on page 406
bookpartno on page 408
bookrestriction on page 410
bookrights on page 412
booktitle on page 371
booktitlealt on page 372
boolean on page 234
brand on page 155
category on page 156
chapter on page 373
chdesc on page 65
chdeschd on page 62
chhead on page 60
choice on page 67
choices on page 66
choicetable on page 58
choption on page 64
choptionhd on page 60
chrow on page 63
cite on page 123
cmd on page 52
cmdname on page 307
codeblock on page 252
codeph on page 254
colophon on page 374

colspec on page 135
completed on page 414
component on page 157
conbody on page 28
concept on page 27
contactnumber on page 451
contactnumbers on page 453
context on page 46
coords on page 333
copyrfirst on page 414
copyrholder on page 159
copyright on page 158
copyrlast on page 416
copyryear on page 160
country on page 455
created on page 161
critdates on page 162
data-about on page 208
data on page 212
day on page 418
dd on page 105
ddhd on page 102
dedication on page 376
delim on page 292
desc on page 109
dita on page 193
dl on page 98
dlentry on page 103
dlhead on page 100
draft-comment on page 193
draftintro on page 377
dt on page 104
dthd on page 101
edited on page 419
edition on page 421
emailaddress on page 456
emailaddresses on page 458
entry on page 141
example on page 23
featnum on page 163
fig on page 106
figgroup on page 108
figurelist on page 379
filepath on page 312
firstname on page 460
fn on page 196
foreign on page 217
fragment on page 278
fragref on page 279
frontmatter on page 380
generationidentifier on page 462
glossarylist on page 381
glossdef on page 74
glossentry on page 73
glossterm on page 75
groupchoice on page 272
groupcomp on page 275
groupseq on page 270
honorific on page 464

i on page 240
image on page 110
imagemap on page 330
index-base on page 204
index-see-also on page 338
index-see on page 337
index-sort-as on page 340
indexlist on page 382
indexterm on page 199
indextermref on page 203
info on page 53
isbn on page 422
itemgroup on page 225
keyword on page 83
keywords on page 164
kwd on page 285
lastname on page 466
li on page 94
lines on page 121
link on page 182
linkinfo on page 191
linklist on page 184
linkpool on page 187
linktext on page 190
locality on page 468
localityname on page 469
lq on page 125
mainbooktitle on page 384
maintainer on page 424
map on page 342
menucascade on page 323
metadata on page 165
middlename on page 470
month on page 426
msgblock on page 303
msgnum on page 304
msgph on page 301
namedetails on page 472
navref on page 345
navtitle on page 14
no-topic-nesting on page 226
note on page 78
notices on page 384
object on page 114
ol on page 90
oper on page 290
option on page 256
organization on page 427
organizationinfo on page 474
organizationname on page 476
organizationnamedetails on page 477
otherinfo on page 477
othermeta on page 167
p on page 77
param on page 118
parml on page 261
parmname on page 259
part on page 386
pd on page 265

permissions on page 168
person on page 429
personinfo on page 480
personname on page 482
ph on page 80
platform on page 169
plentry on page 264
postalcode on page 484
postreq on page 71
pre on page 119
preface on page 388
prereq on page 45
printlocation on page 430
prodinfo on page 170
prodname on page 171
prognum on page 172
prolog on page 150
propdesc on page 41
propdeschd on page 38
properties on page 34
property on page 39
prophead on page 35
proptype on page 39
proptypehd on page 36
propvalue on page 40
propvaluehd on page 37
pt on page 264
published on page 432
publisher on page 173
publisherinformation on page 434
publishtype on page 435
q on page 127
refbody on page 31
reference on page 30
refsyn on page 32
related-links on page 24
relcell on page 349
relcolspec on page 351
relheader on page 350
relrow on page 348
reltable on page 346
repsep on page 297
required-cleanup on page 227
resourceid on page 174
result on page 70
reviewed on page 437
revised on page 175
revisionid on page 439
row on page 139
screen on page 326
searchtitle on page 15
section on page 21
sep on page 295
series on page 177
shape on page 335
shortcut on page 325
shortdesc on page 19
simpletable on page 144
sl on page 95

sli on page 97
source on page 178
started on page 440
state on page 229
stentry on page 148
step on page 49
stepresult on page 68
steps-unordered on page 48
steps on page 47
stepxmp on page 57
sthead on page 146
strow on page 147
sub on page 247
substep on page 55
substeps on page 54
summary on page 440
sup on page 245
synblk on page 282
synnote on page 283
synnoteref on page 284
synph on page 266
syntaxdiagram on page 268
systemoutput on page 316
table on page 130
tablelist on page 389
task on page 43
taskbody on page 44
tbody on page 138
term on page 231
tested on page 441
tgroup on page 133
thead on page 137
thoroughfare on page 484
title on page 12
titlealts on page 13
tm on page 205
toc on page 390
topic on page 10
topicgroup on page 356
topichead on page 357
topicmeta on page 351
topicref on page 353
trademarklist on page 392
tt on page 243
tutorialinfo on page 69
u on page 242
uicontrol on page 319
ul on page 92
unknown on page 221
url on page 485
urls on page 487
userinput on page 314
var on page 287
varname on page 310
volume on page 443
vrm on page 180
vrmlist on page 179
wintitle on page 321
xref on page 86

year on page 445